

THE 1483 67
Gentleman's Compleat Jockey
WITH THE
Perfect Horseman,
AND
Experienc'd Farrier.
CONTAINING,

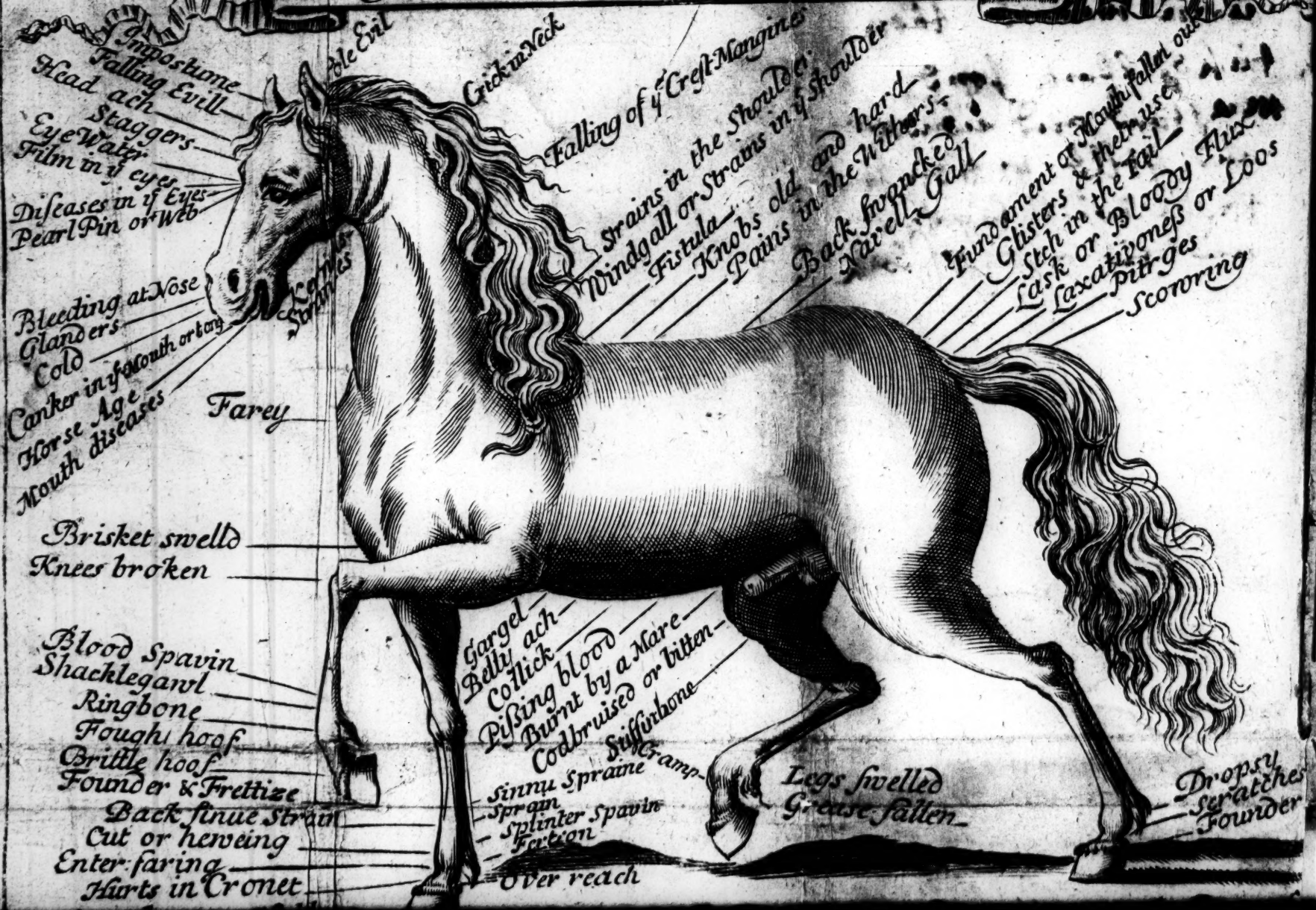
- I. The Nature of Horses; their Breeding Feeding and Management in all Paces, to fit them for War, Racing, Travel, Hunting, or other Recreation and Advantages.
- II. The true Method, with proper Rules and Directions to Order, Diet and Physick the Running-Horse, to bring him to any Match, or Race, with Success.
- III. The Methods to Buy Horses, and prevent being Cheated; Noting the particular Marks of the Good and Bad Horses, in all their Circumstances.
- IV. How to make Blazes, Stars and Dots To Fasten Horse with little Charge, and to make him Lively and Lovely.
- V. The whole Art of a Farrier, in curing all Diseases, Grievs and Sorrances incident to Horses; with their Symptoms and Causes.
- VI. The Methods of Shooing, Blooding, Roweling, Flogging, and prevention of Diseases, and many other things from long Experience and Approved Practice.

By A. S. GENT.

LONDON:

Printed for Henry Nelme, at the Leg and Star, over against the Royal Exchange in Cornhill. 1697.

The Gentlemans Compleat Jockey





THE PREFACE.

READER,

I Here present you with a *Labour'd Work*, containing all that is *Excellent* to be known, relating to *Horses and Mares, &c.* the most necessary and useful Creature to *Man*, in *Peace and War*; *Enriching* with their *Labours*, and *pleasing* in their more nice *Industry and Management*; and consequently, their *well-Breeding and Instructions*, as to what they are capable, is necessary to be known; therefore I have laid it down in such an *easy, tho' perfect Method*, that the *meanest Capacity* may soon understand it, and the *largest*, find *Subject-Matter* enough to *busie* it self.

That these *Creatures* have been highly *Esteemed* in all *Ages*, and their *Understanding* very great, *History* makes frequent mention; So that their *Preservation* was had in much regard: And *Hypocrates*, and other *Eminent Physicians*, *Studied* it, next to *Man's*, laying down *Rules and Methods* to discover and cure the *Diseases* incident to them. And this *Example* I have also follow'd, that so *generous a Creature* may at no time be lost for want of *suitable Remedies* in any matter that may befall him. The *Station* it has pleased *God* to put me in, has led me to *Experience* in this *Creature*, and I have found many things concerning them, to which, as far as I can perceive, the *Ancients* were *Strangers*.

The P R E F A C E.

I have put them into a suitable Method, and Incerted them in this Book, besides what are taken from the Works of the most Expert Managers and Farriers that have ever been made Publick: So that I may without straining a point of Modesty, truly say, it not only Answers, but much exceeds what is promised in the Title-page, and is the best of its kind that has hitherto been abroad in the World. To prove this, I could incert many Particulars, but they being plainly to be seen in reading the following Pages; and Brevity (as I conceive) always most commendable in a Preface, I draw to a Conclusion:

As well knowing that when all that I can say, is said, I must leave it to the Censure of the Reader, and therefore will only desire one Favour, (which no reasonable Man will refuse) and, that is, not to pass Sentence before you Read and put in Practice so much of it as shall be suitable to your Occasion. And so not fearing its coming to the Touch-stone, to prove its real Worth and Value, I remain, Reader,

Your Friend and Servant,
to Oblige you in what I may,

A. S.



T H E

Gentleman's Compleat Jockey :

WITH THE

Perfect Horseman and Farrier.

Of the Natures and Properties of Horses.

Horses, of all the unreasonable Creatures upon the Earth, are of the greatest Understanding, having in them (as the Learned affirm) a certain natural Instinct, not only of the knowledge of their Riders and Keepers, but also of their own Generation and Descent, knowing their Sires and Dams, in such a manner as they will refuse (as *Pliny* says) to couple or ingender with them ! They are also Creatures the aptest to learn any Motion, and the readiest to obey their Teacher, having a greater love to Exercise than any other Beast. They are of an infinite great Courage, taking an exceeding delight in the Wars ; and (as some do affirm) have a certain fore-knowledge of the Battel, and will prepare themselves for the same. They will mourn for the loss or deaths of their Masters ; and are so apt to indure Labour, that it is written of the Horses of the *Samaritans*, That they'll gallop a hundred Miles end-ways, without rest or stay ; they are naturally long liv'd, and by choice Keepers have been brought up to fifty Years ; but for thirty it hath been ordinary with them. The Mares are shorter liv'd, surviving till twenty or twenty-five at the farthest. They are of all Beasts the most beautiful of shape. They are fit for the Saddle at four years of age, for the Wars at six, for the Race at eight, for Hunting, and ex-cream Matches, at ten or eleven. The Female bear their

2 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Foal full eleven Months, and foal in the twelfth: the best time for their ingendering is *March*, at the increase of the Moon, or in part of it; the Mare foaleth standing; they are supposed to be so loving and kind to their Generation, that if a Foal lose the Dam, yet the other Mares, which are with milch, will, of their own accord, lend their teats, to feed and nurse up the Orphan foal. Horses are subject to more Diseases then any other Beast; some write three hundred, or as many as belong to Man.

The Means to make the Seed of the Horse perfect for Generation.

The Seed of the Horse ought to be hot and dry, so that all excessive moisture of Seed must be abated and taken away: Now the means to make hot and dry Seed for Generation, is Labour and spare Diet, the Digestion being made perfect, through heat proceeding from Labour, so that the meat that the Horse and Mare should feed upon, should be in quality of Nature hot and dry, and then moderately taken: The seed doth naturally partake of the quality and temperature of the meat; his meat will increase an uniform Seed, so that the Colt will be like unto the Sires: The meat should be old sweet Hay or Wheat-straw, moderately given them; sweet Oats, winnow'd and cleans'd from the dust and filth, mingled with old dried Pease or Beans, with a scattering of Bay-salt and Anniseeds; the Provender, for their better digestion, may be given them three times a day; their Water sweet and pure; and every day early in the morning, when they are fasting, moderately exercised until they sweat, their Stable clean'd, and then painfully dressed and rubbed dry, and thorough cold before any meat be given to them; the which doth not only perfect digestion, and exhaust the moisture from the Seed, but also strengtheneth and cleanseth their blood and bodies from all raw and imperfect humours, whereby you shall perceive them to exceed in pride and lust. About eight or ten days before they come to action, add to their diet some sweet Wheat, equal in mixture and quantity with the rest of their provender; for Wheat is a great cooler of the Heart, and an

increaser

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

increaser of the vital-spirits, which above all things for that action is principally to be moved and stirred up; sometimes put in a pint of White-wine, or a bottle of Ale, to abate the cold quality of their Water. These Means being rightly used, you shall plainly discern the endowment of a good temperature, to possess a sufficient power to shape a perfect body; which some of the Gentry would give any rate for.

Observations for the better Directions in Breeding of the Mare.

There must be a great discretion used in feeding of the Mare, until she hath foaled, least by the long use of over-bad Meats, the Colt in the Womb be impaired from that quality and temperature it had from the Seed; therefore the Mare may not so far eat of contrary Meats, least the Colt lose of those good qualities, which it received (as hath been said) of the Seed whereof it was made.

Of what Age the Horse or Mare ought to be that Begot and Bring forth.

Observe every Horse until he be six Years old is a Colt, but never after, and that is his first Age, and if after that time he lose any of his Teeth they come not again, because the excess of his Moisture doth then begin to abate, being until then predominate in Moisture; and from five Years of Age until he be ten, is counted his middle, youthful and perfect Age, for his vigor, spirit and action, because he is then more Hot and less Moist; and from ten Years of Age to fifteen is his declining, because then Heat and Moisture do much decay; and from fifteen Years of Age until twenty his old Age, because that then he is cold and dry. The best time for their Ingendring is *March*, at the increase of the Moon or in part of it; the Mare carrieth (as hath been said) her Foal eleven Months and foaleth standing in the twelfth.

To know whether a Mare hath conceived, and how to order her after time of Conception, until the time of Foaling, for the better Breeding and Nourishment of the Colt.

If she can't not her Seed, but eateth freely when she cometh

4 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

cometh to Meat, and so continueth, and doth not neigh nor piss often, neither casteth her eye gazing after a Horse, and within a Day or two begins to be gaunt-bellied, because her Womb in Conception and closing it self together in keeping the Seed, trusseth up and maketh it show less to the sight than before, as if she were suddenly become lean, and her Hair lyeth very smooth, and brighter then before; as also about ten Days after, offering her a Horse two or three Days before the Full, and likewise before the New Moon, (and she abhorreth Copulation) it assureth that her Nature is satisfy'd, and are manifest Signs of her Conception. And as touching her Keeping, let her not drink so much as Nature desireth, and still keep her with the same Meat and Dyet for twelve Days after: Presently after her Foaling milk the Mare as clean as you can, which will not only draw down her Milk, but make the same encrease, and also keep the Udder in a good temper, that the Milk do not clod, which if it should, the Mare will quickly become dry. Boil her Milk with the tops of Lavender, bath all her Udder therewith, and so continue till the clods and knobs in the Udder be dissolved. After foaling give her a good Mash made of Malt, or Wheat-meal; let the Stable be open and airy, and the Floor paved and not planked; in the Provender you may also put the Powder of Brimstone, the Powder of the Roots of *Enula Campana*, of White-lilly-roots, of *Polypodium* of the Oak, of Saven, Marsh-wormwood, Tobacco, Garlick chopt small, and such like, and when she goes to Grass, let her run no longer then *Bartholomew-tide*.

Of Taming of Colts.

The yearly wintering Colts in the Stable, will make them tame and domestical, as also bring many other benefits both to the Owner and the Colts, until they come to be ridden, which should not be until five Years of Age, if you would have them strong, sound and durable Colts. When the Colt is made gentle to suffer the saddle and crupper to be set on his back, shooes on his feet, and also lead to water; then take another gentle Horse, and ride upon

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 5

upon him leading the Colt in a halter; cross gird your Colt, and ride him a mile or two, and make much of your Colt, and with this gentle usage the Colt will love and desire your Company, and oftentimes when you are in the Stable with him, cause some Drum to beat, or Gun to play or shoot to harden him, at which time stand by and cherish him.

Of making of Colts to Amble, from the time of their Foaling.

Put on a halter, bridle and saddle, at your pleasure, on the Mare's head, in the morning lead her forth, let the Colt follow her gently, as soft a pace as she can go, into some even, plain, and hard Ground, and be sure that the Colt be not inforced to go faster then you lead the Mare; then observe and you shall find the Colt going by her, that he doth altogether go and strain his Legs in an Amble, after you have practised several times, the Colt will increase in the swiftness of the pace of his Amble, and then when you think fit, you may Back him.

Of the Stable.

First, For the scituation of the Stable, it should be on a dry Ground, so as all the seasons of the Year, both Man and Horse may come and return from the same clean and dry; also it should be builded and so placed that there be a continual Current for cleansing and keeping the same sweet from all things that are noysome. It should be cealed over the Horses, to keep both Horse, Rack, Meat and Manger from all dust; it must not have any filthy Gutter or Sink near, in, or under the same, neither any Privy, nor any other unwholesome savour of Hogsties, Hen-houses, or such like. Some ancient Writers affirm, that the strong air of a Privy will make a Horse blind; the Horse is naturally a proud Beast, and delighteth in cleanness; the Rack should be set high and stooping, that no dust or filth may annoy the Horses Eyes or Maine, or indanger his Crest, by crooked or wry feeding; the Manger should be deep and strong, for casting Provender out of it with the Horse's Nose, with posts and partitions, as you may see in all well-ordered Stables; the Floor should be paved and not plank-

6 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

ed for these Reasons: First, it is more durable and lasting, and less charge, it maketh your Horse more bold upon stony and hard Grounds, as also it is an excellent conveniency for Colts being unshoo'd, for it hardeneth the Hoof so as by continuance and custom, they will be as bold on the Stones as if they were shoo'd. The Pavement should be even, not higher before, where the fore-feet stand, for it will prove painful to the hinder Legs, so as the Horse, unless necessity compel him, cannot stand strait or be bold in the Stable; there should be divers Windows, the which should be so placed, that the Stable be therewith cleared with the Air, and to be close shut, or open'd as occasion shall serve, in the night-time, especially in the Winter, at other times it should be kept something cold, for the Horse will feed and digest the better. There should not be any dust or Loam-walls about or near the Rack or Manger, for the Horse will naturally lick them to his great hurt. The Dung must not by any means lye close to the Stable. The Grooms should be lodged near to the Stable to be ready at all times, and upon all occasions; and joyning to their Lodging should be a convenient Room, with a Press therein to set their Saddles, Bridles, Girts, and such like; with all kind of necessary Instruments, to mend such Furniture, with all things necessary for Shooing, letting of Blood, and such like, together with Medicinable things, either for inward Diseases, or outward Hurts. There should also to the Stable be annexed certain Sheds or Rooms to lay Horse-litter in, both new and old, for it is most unfit for the Litter to be under the Manger, as commonly is us'd, lest the Horse should either feed on it, or be offended with the savour. Besides, there should be a little inclos'd Room, such as Horses, after their labour, might be put into, to wallow themselves, wherein most Horses take exceeding delight, it being also most healthful for them so to do, the which the antient Writers affirm, doth so much comfort a Horse, that if they be tyred, having afterwards wallowed himself, being clean rubbed, will courageously travel presently again, there should also be Places or Sheds for the Horses to be cleans'd, curry'd and trimm'd in, neither would I have any Horse having

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 7

having the Glaunders, or any other Sickness, Hurt or Disease, to remain in the Stable at such a time, but kept in a Shed for the present from the rest of the Horses, by which means, and all other good Dyet, there cannot be any great doubt of Health and long Life to the Horses.

Of Shooing of Horses.

If the true knowledge of Hoofs were rightly understood, then shooing could not be difficult: First, I will set down what is a perfect Hoof, it must be lean, smooth, deep, tough, narrow towards the Toe, and conveniently broad in the Heels, much like an Asses Hoff, for it should be round. A Hoof that wants the deepness of the Coffin cannot be of long service; and because all the weight of the Horse resteth upon the Quarters and Heels of the Forefeet, therefore those Quarters, I mean the edge of the Coffin on the hinder part of the Forefeet must be maintain'd and taken off as little as may be, for thereby the Horse treadeth and beareth equally, which is a special means to keep him from interfering behind. Therefore the Farrier must to his uttermost preserve the hinder quarters of the Forefeet, taking little or nothing away from the edge of the Coffin, because, as we said, all the weight and burthen of the Horse resteth upon the Quarters and Heels of the Forefeet, which few Farriers little think upon; but the Toes of the Forefeet being naturally thick and hard, must by them be always abated and pared thin as the edge of a Knife, whereby they make the Hoofs of the Forefeet to be low before, and high in the Quarters. Therefore when they do pare the Coffins of the Forefeet, let them do it so even and plain as the Eye can discern, that the Shooe laid upon the Coffin may seem to be glued thereunto, for that you cannot see the light betwixt the Shooe and the Coffin in any part, otherwise the Shooe is not well turned or welded, or the Hoof truly pared, but before it be nailed, be sure to amend the fault, so that it may bear even and just upon the edge of all the Coffin; then before you let the Farrier set on the Shooe, in both the quarters of the Coffin of every Foot next to the Frush,

8 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

let him cut out of the end of the corner of the Coffin, as near to the quick of the Heel as may be, as much of the Coffin as you may lay your Finger in it, whereby it shall never gather too near the Frush, to close up, and become narrow in the Heels, so as when the Horse is shoo'd, you shall have a very good distance betwixt the broad end of the Frush, and the sponge of the Shooe, whereby all Gravel and Stones will wash and work out of the sponge of the Shooe, being cut aslope; then when the Shooe is tacked on with nails, set down the Horses Foot, and stand directly behind the Horse, and view whether the Frush of the Foot be direct and of just proportion, even betwixt the Webs of the Shooes, and whether the Horse stand right, and the Frush equally betwixt the Webs or Sponges of the Shooe, and you shall be assured thereby that the Shooe standeth right, the continual use whereof will cause the Horse to tread and traverse boldly and surely, because his Quarterns being the bearing place, will be broad and even to support the whole Body. And for the true making of the Shooe, all the Web should be strait and plain, not drawn in at the Heels and Quarter narrow, or beaten to the Heels which many use to do, neither hallowed, if the Feet be perfect but even and flat, with a broad Web, and the Sponges thicker and more substantial than any part of the Shooe, to cause the Joynt to stand upright, and so wide in the Quarters as both sides may disbord the coffin of the Hoof the breadth of a Straw, to guard and save the Coffin of the Hoof, being the only strength of the whole Foot, and also the shooe so far set back to guard the Heels, as may save the same from bruising and cutting with Stones, and unless the Coffin be continually so kept open from hard oppressing, and closing of the Tuel of the Foot, which is inclosed within the Coffin, whereby the Tuel becometh bound to the great grief and lameness of the Horse, but the Foot and Joynt of the Horse maintained as a principal post to support the whole Building, for otherwise the Horse will become Hoof-bound, which many ignorantly call dry foundred, and also make the Joynt to become weak, lame, and full of Windgalls. And therefore
when

The Gentleman's Compleat Tackey. 9

when he comes to the piercing of the Shooe of the Fore-foot, let him not spare to pierce it from the Quarter to the hard Toe, but not backward to the Heel, and let the Shooe be so pierced, as the holes be much wider on the outside of the Shooe then within, for the holes of the inside of the Shooe should be no wider then the Shank of the Nail may well fit, otherwise the Shooe will never fit fast and steady, and the circle of the piercing more distant from the edge o'th'-toe, then from the edge of the Quarter, because every Smith knoweth that there is more hold to be taken with less danger, in respect of the Tuel and Quick of the Foot, and all the Nails would be untoled without Shoulders, which will so sink, and strongly fill the Hole, as that the Shooe will be well fixed, and by cutting the Hoof a little with the point of a Knife, let the Clinch be clean hid, the which shooing should always be done, eight or ten Days before you travel your Horse, for by that time the Hoof will be grown to the Nails to hold the Shooe fast. And for the helping of interfering, you must keep him full of Flesh, and always preserve the Coffins on the inside of the Hoofs, without paring away more than to make them even for the Shoes, and abate the outside of the Coffin of the same Foot, and besides, make the Sponges of the Shooes on the inside of the Shooes much thicker then the outside.

How to know a Horse that is durable, and of continuance in Journey, &c.

This observation must also be from his shape, the others follow: First, It is to be considered that Strength is the cause of the continuance of Travel, then consider in what part of the Body of the Horse that Strength principally and naturally resteth, for as the strength of the Bull is naturally in the neck, of the Lyon and Bear in the paws, of the Dog in the chops, so of the Horse in the fore-part, where Nature hath imposed the Burthen, and there is and must be his principal force and strength, the which fore-part must be deep and broad from the point of his toes, or withers, to the Bottom of his chest or breast; his ribs beating out as

10 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

the lid or cover of a trunck, whereby he will appear broad, full, round, and bearing out in the chest or breast, with an evenness of chest and belly to the flank, so as that his belly hung not deeper than his chest, nor his chest deeper then his belly, with lean, upright, and strait pasterns, somewhat narrow hoofed towards the toe, assure your selves such a Horse will be durable, and as good almost at the end of his labour as at the beginning; if he be of a contrary shape; then will his actions be contrary, namely, the longer he is travel'd, the more Jade.

How to know a free and perfect spirited Horse.

This powerful Spirit proceeds from the vital spirit and arterial blood that goes wandring through the whole body, to stir up the power of the Beast, to give him force and vigour to work; and as this spirit is of substance most pure, so when it is plentifully infused it maketh and worketh all the Creature, and quality of the same pure, so as Man not knowing or finding the reason, cannot but wonder at the work and Workmaster. Wherefore, for the satisfaction and confirmation of this Proposition, how to know a perfect, quick, and free-spirited Horse, you must also still retain all the description of shape before describ'd, by all which descriptions you shall assuredly know his qualities, only upon the view, as if you had made tryal of him many years; but if the Horse be defective in his shape, as I have describ'd, then assure your self that he wanteth that natural perfection I have referred the rule unto. Observe then, I beseech you, that a perfect Horse by Nature is thus shap'd, viz. a lean slender head, broad fore-head, great black eyes, full and plain over the lids, slender, thin, and lean jaws, broad, thin, long, and a high reared neck, the head set to the neck as naturally as a Ram's head when he fighteth, high withers, and a deep broad chest or breast, his ribs of an equal evenness from his chest to his flank, lean, upright pasterns, with a lean and deep hoof; such a Horse, assure thy self, will be found in all his actions naturally bold, loving, easie, sure-footed, durable, and free-going. But because I know and do assure my self, that *unus Mens no est*

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 11

capax tanti Moris, that it is impossible that one head should be so well furnish'd as to neglect the opinions of the antient Writers, I have therefore annexed their Description, humbly submitting my self to the censure of the Experienced and Learned.

Of the Shape of a Horse.

The last thing to know a good Horse is his Shape, which originally made by God, was no doubt most excellent, for the works of God were all perfect. The particular Observations and Descriptions of the perfect shape of a Horse are in number 32, against which I question not but that there may be Objections raised, which I will not trouble my self to answer, as being conscious that what I shall write of this Subject, I have partly by experience, and partly received from the most approved Authors. I will begin with the Hoof, and so ascend till the whole Body be described.

First therefore, they say, That the Hoof should be black, smooth, dry, large, round and hollow: Some write, That if it be soft and tender, and the Heel broad, that is a sign of lightness, and that the Mare will from her Foaling, tread light upon the ground, being afraid to trust her Hoofs being tender, and therefore straineth her Legs and Back the more.

2d Rule is, That the Hoofs should be small and heavy answerable to the Joynt, that it should be hairy, his Fetterlock to be good, in that it also answereth his nature.

3. That his Pastern should be short, neither too low nor too high, and therewithal strong beneath, nor apt to founder, the strength of the Pastern being the uprightness thereof.

4. That his Joynts ought to be great, with long Fetterlocks behind, this greatness of his Joynts must also be answerable to the proportion of his Body.

5. That his Legs ought to be strait and broad.

6. That his Knees should be great, lean and plain,

7. That his Thighs should be full of sinews, the Bones

white and soft

whereof to be short, equal, just well proportion'd; that when he standeth with his Legs together, they should be more distant one from another towards the Breast then beneath, which proceeds from the fulness and breadth of the Breast, which causeth that distance.

8. That his Shoulders should be long, large, and full of flesh proportionable to his Body.

9. That his breast should be large and round.

10. That his Neck should be rather long than short, great towards the Breast, bending in the midst, and slender towards the Head.

11. That his Ears should be small, sharp, and upright.

12. That his Forehead should be lean and large, that largeness to be both of breadth and length, according to his natural proportion.

13. That his Eyes should be great and black.

14. That the hollowness of his Brows be well filled and shooting outward.

15. That his Jaws should be slender and lean.

16. That his Nostrils should be open, and puffed up that you may see the red within apt for Air.

17. That he ought to have a great Mouth.

18. And which is strange, that his Head should be like a Sheeps-head: I answer, That Sheeps-heads being as other Beasts, are of divers Shapes, it cannot be directly answered, for if I should conceive the shape thereof contrary to the Writers meaning, I should wrong them, and therefore leave it, having already given my description as to my own knowledge, but if you take it according to the proportion of most Sheep, it is a good Shape.

19. That the Main should be thin and long, which betokeneth strength, and the thinness, aptness to be taught.

20. That his Withers and Walleys should be sharp pointed, tight and strait, so that a Man may see from thence the Posture of his Shoulders.

21. That his Back should be short, even and plain.

22. That his Sides should be long and large, with small space betwixt the hinder Rib and the Huckle-bone.

23. That

23. That his Belly should be long and great, orderly hidden under his Ribs.
24. That his Flank should be full and not gaunt, with natural frizled hair on both sides, and the higher such hairs mount the better.
25. That his Rump should be round and plain, with a large space betwixt the Huckle-bones.
26. That his Thighs should be large and long, with Bones well proportioned and full of flesh.
27. That his Hams should be lean, dry and strait.
28. That his Hoofs should be large and crooked like a Hart, which should be a sign of swiftness.
29. That his Tail be full of hairs, long, down to the the ground: or as some write, lean and crisp.
30. That his Truncheon should be of a measurable bigness and well couched.
31. That his Stones and Yard should be small.
32. That he be proportioned like a Stag, lower before then behind.

Of the Colours of Horses.

Now we proceed to the examination of the certainty of the knowledge that might be taken from the Horse's colour, which most Men do so embrace, my purpose is to name those which they call the best. *viz.* brown, bay, dappled, black full of silver hairs, black like the Moor; the roan, bright bay, dark bay, bright sorrel, flea-bitten, whitely yard, &c. The ancient Writers tell us that every Horse is coloured as he is complexion'd, and according to the complexion he is good or evil dispositioned, as he doth participate of the Elements so he is complexion'd; affirming that if he have most of the Element of Fire, then he is choleric, and therefore light, hot and fiery, and of no great force, as the bright sorrel; but if of the Element of Water, then dull, slow, heavy, cold of Nature, and such are most commonly milk-white; but if of the Element of the Air, then more full of blood, sanguine, pleasant, and of colour bay; but if of the Earth, then melancholy, faint-hearted, sad and heavy; the colours of these are dark, dun, russet or black.

The

14 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

the Learned say, there are four Complexions, as there are four Elements; but Horses do almost yearly alter their colours, the Mare at the time of her foaling; *Opianus* says that the colours of Horses were chosen and maintained for the hunting of wild Beasts; if a Horse be of a brown bay, which the *Frenchmen* do call *Bayarie*, loyal trusty *Bayard*, which they account to be the Captain of all colours, if withal this brown bay have a white star, white foot, and such like, he is valued oftentimes more then he is thrice worth. Thus hath many Ages taken that for a cause which is no cause.

Of the Horses Marks.

The *Italian* Writers have drawn particular Names, from whom the People borrow their Opinions, and therefore when a Horse hath a white-foot or a white-mark, which the *Italian* calls *Balzano*, if the white extend high and large (they say) it pretendeth debility, because whiteness betokeneth weakness, dulness, and the like, and that they call *Balzani*, they tell us of *Calzoti*, *Arteglio*, *Travato*, *Trustravato*, *Rapicano*, *Attusvato*, *Gurzo*, *Zuino*, &c. and sure I am that neither with foot, white star, white list, strake, snip, phillet in the forehead, white rump, black and red flea-bittings, ostrick-feather, where it cannot be seen, meal-nose, meale-flank, bearded under his chops like a Goat, black and long fetterlocks, long main, black tail, black list, and such like, are not to be depended on as the assurant of a good Horse, for undoubtedly you shall find good and bad of all colours, but to overcome Custom, is a hard fight.

How to know a Horse that is bold by Nature.

A Horse that is fearful by Nature may, by compulsory means, after long use make little or no shew of fear, as being in a Ship upon the Sea, where are trumpets, guns, and the like, not having means to avoid the same, by use and continuance thereof, seemeth not fearful. But the physogmony of a Horse is much more certain, for he cannot keep secret or conceal as man can, but being in perfect health remaineth ever one and the same in countenance,

To.

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 15

To conclude and make the truth hereof appear, choose a Horse with a broad forehead, a great black full eye standing out like a Hare's, and a high rear'd forepart, and be assured that by Nature he is bold, and to give you a farther assurance, mark a Horse with a narrow forehead, little eyes and low forepart; which is meer contrary, and assure your self by Nature, that he is starting and fearful, and to seal up the truth thereof, the tryal will confirm you.

How to make a white Scar or white Spot in a Horse's Face, or in any other place.

Take two or three Apples, the sowrest you can get, and roast them at a quick fire, then being extream hot, take one of them in a cloath, and having cut off the skin, clap the hot Apple to the Horse's forehead, and hold it hard thereunto till the heat be asswaged, then try if the hair will come off, which if it will not, then take another hot Apple, and do as you did before; then when the hair is come off, as broad as you would have it, then take another hot Apple, and clap it to the scalded skin, holding it hard to, till all the skin blister and come off as well as the hair; then anoint the sore place twice a day with Honey, and the next hair which cometh will be white.

To keep your Woollen Horse-cloaths, Breast-cloaths, Rubbers, and the like from Moths.

When you turn your Horse or Horses to grass, take all your Woollen Cloaths, of what kind soever, and first wash them clean and dry them, then hang them in the Sun, dust them, and brush them, then lay them on some Fleaks or some other open things, a pretty distance from the ground, and spread all open; then take the hoofs of Horses and Kattel, and chopping them in pieces, burn them under the Woollen things, so as the smoak may come to them in every part; then, being thorowly smoak'd, fold them up handsomly, and between every fold strow the powder of Walnut tree-leaves well dried, and so lay them up in a Chest, and you shall never be troubled with Moths, which are very unwholsom for the Horse, and troublesome

16 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

to him. Others use to rub their Cloaths on the wrong sides all over with the tops and tender parts of Wormwood, with the same effect.

How to defend a Horse from Flies.

This is a noisome offence in the Summer-time; therefore when you find the trouble thereof, take Arse-smart, and keep it in running Water, and make it exceeding strong of the Herb, and therewith sprinkle and wash the Horse all over, and no Fly will touch him a second time. The Ivy, Rue, or Herb of Grace will do the like.

Observations in the Eleſting of Horses, and the Uses.

That which giveth the nobleſt Character to a good Horſeman, is, the well-eleſting of Horses for that use and purpose he intends to employ them; and in this Device there is no better nor readier a way than the knowledge of Races and Strains from whence the Horses descend; for (as I have already intimated) it is certain, that the Climate, Heat, and Cold, are the three excellent Elements in a Horse's Composition. As to the election of Horses by their shapes and proportion, by their colour and complexions, and by their marks and other outward semblances, I have already written sufficiently, and intend to iterate nothing. To come then to the election of Horses, according to their Races, Breeds, and Climates; if you will elect a Horse for service, of martial and warlike Employment, then these are best: the *Neapolitan*, the *Sardinian*, the *Almain*, the *French*, or any of these bastardiz'd in themselves, or with fair well-shap'd and well-metal'd *English* Mares. If you will elect for Swiftneſs and Service, then the *Arabian*, the *Barbary*, the *Spanish*, the *Grecian*, or any of these bastardiz'd in themselves, or with our best *English* Mares. If you will chooſe for long Travel and Service, then the *English*, the *Hungarian*, the *Swedeland*, the *Poland*, the *Irish*. If you chuse for Draught or Service, the *Flanders*, the *Frieſland*, or any of the *Netherlands*, either bastardiz'd in themselves, or with our *English* races; and these are excellent for Coach, for Cart, for Pack, or for any Burthen.

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 17

I shall end this Discourse of Horses of several Countries with a general Observation I have entertain'd of the Properties of Horses : A Horse hath two Properties of a Man; the first is, to have a proud Heart ; and the second is, to be bold and hardy. He hath two Properties of a Badger, the first is, to have a white rase or ball in his Forehead ; the second is, to have a white Foot. He hath four Properties of a Lyon, the first is, to have a broad Breast, the second, to be stiff-docked ; the third, to be wild in the Countenance ; the fourth is, to have four good Legs. He hath nine Properties of an Ox ; the first is, to be broad Ribb'd ; the second is, to be low-brawn'd ; the third is, to be short-pastern'd ; the fourth is, to have great Sinews ; the fifth is to be wide betwixt the Challet ; the sixth is, to have great Nostrils ; the seventh is, to be big on the Chine ; the eighth is, to be fat and well fed, the ninth is, to be upright standing. He also hath nine Properties of a Hare ; the first is, stiff-ear'd ; the second, to be green-ey'd ; the third, the eyes round ; the fourth, to have a lean Head ; the fifth, to have lean Knees ; the sixth, to be light of foot ; the seventh, to turn upon a light ground ; the eighth to have a short Buttock ; the ninth, to have two good Fillets. He hath nine Properties of a Fox ; the first is, to be prick-ear'd ; the second, to be little ear'd ; the third to be round-sided ; the fourth, to be side-tail'd ; the fifth, to be short-leg'd ; the sixth, to be black-leg'd ; the seventh, to be short-trotting ; the eighth, to be well colour'd ; the ninth, to have a little Head. He hath nine Properties of an Ass ; the first is, to be small mouth'd ; the second, to be long-rein'd ; the third, to be thin-crested ; the fourth, to be streight-back'd ; the fifth, to have small Stones ; the sixth, to be Lath-leg'd ; the seventh to be round footed ; the eighth, to be hollow footed ; the ninth, to have a rough Foot. He borrows ten Properties of a Woman ; the first is to be lightsome, and of a merry cheer ; the second is, to be well-paced ; the third is, to have a broad Forehead ; the fourth is, to have well-fiz'd Buttocks ; the fifth, to be hard of Ward ; the sixth, to be always busie with the Mouth ; the seventh, to be chewing
of

18 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey

of the Bridle; the eighth, to be good at a long Journey; the ninth, to be easie to leap upon; the tenth, to be flourishing under a Man.

My Reader may perceive, that I descend to those familiar Instances, the better to inculcate the shape of a perfect Horse into his Mind, without which there can be no good nor safe Election, let the Horse be of any Country whatsoever.

To fatten a lean Horse in a short time.

Take him from Grass and Soil, bring him into the Stable, curry and rub him, so as to loosen the Skin, and chafe it with Neatsfoot-oil; give him three times a day, for a week, Mashes made of boiled Oats, Beans, and Bran, to a good quantity; after this, for a week, make up Balls of Barly-meal, Honey, Enulacampane beaten into powder, the Juice of sweet Fennel, and Cummin-seeds; make these up into Balls with new Ale, and give him three of them a day as big as Pullets eggs for a week, and after each half a peck of Oats and two quarts of split Beans. This done, give him only Oats and Hay; and in a month, unless very old, he will be in extraordinary good case.

A certain way to know the Age of a Horse by his Teeth, Eyebrow, Hoofe, &c.

A Horse's full number of Teeth are accounted Thirty-four, tho' there are some few that never arrive to that number, having only Thirty, or Thirty one; and the times they come are these: A yearling Colt has six on either side above and below, and at three years old, ten in the same manner; and half a year after, those that are ill shaped, call'd *Dog-Teeth*, drop out; and between that and six years, others spring up in their room; and at full size they have as many as they will have, the great Cheek-Teeth and Eye-Teeth, in that space, falling out and receiving others in their stead, being altogether hallow.

These perfected black marks or Specks appear in the fore-Teeth, and continue till eight; at twelve the sides of his Teeth turn black, and so grow longer as his years encrease.

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 19

ease, except he feeds upon very hard Meats, and be-
rong Jaw'd, to wear or keep them at a stay; and after
twelve his Age is not to be found in his Mouth.

Then observe his Temples, to be satisfied in it, which are
is or more crooked and hallow, as he encreases in years.

The next is his Hoof, - which is seamed one over ano-
her; and if upon paring off a piece of the Hoof you find
brittle, dry and crusty it denotes great Age.

His Tail likewise denotes his Age; feel it with your fin-
ger and Thumb, close to the setting on, and if the Joynt
is knobby, and sticking out more than in other parts of it,
the bigness of a small Birds-egg, he exceeds not Two
years.

His Eyes standing out, full, round, and sparkling, not
sinking in the pits, appearing even with his Temples, and
not wrinkled, and not none appearing in his Eyebrows, then
he is a young Horse; but the contrary denotes him old.

If his skin come up easie and fall smooth when let go,
denotes him young; but if he be of a dark colour, and
the Hair of his Eyebrows turn grey or grissled, or it be so
under, it betokens Age: Or if a white Horse have a
black or red Mannel over his Body, it signifies the same.

If the Bars of his Mouth be large and deep, rough in
handling, then he is aged; but if the contrary, then young
and fit for Service.

*Further general Rules necessary to be known by the Horseman
and Farrier, from warrantable Experience.*

A Mare's best breeding-time for a race of good Horses;
between three and ten years, and in suffering her sooner
to take the Horse, she will produce weak and sickly Colts,
and such dull ones as are not worth rearing. Put your Stal-
ion to her in close warm Pasture, and feed them well;
great care be taken of the Mare when she has con-
ceived, often housed, and fed with warm Mash. The
Stallion ought not to exceed her in Age above a year, to
be firm limbed, strongly chested and crested, free as pos-
sible from Diseases and Sorrances: Ride the Mare some-
times, but gently till she has quicken'd, and the Colt be
come

20 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey

come to some perfection; House her in rainy, damp, cold weather; let her Litter be easie, and cherish her with dry Meats, scattering in a few Cummin-seeds.

For gelding Colts, the Spring and Fall are the best times, the weather being open and warm; do this in the wain of the Moon, the Sign being either in *Aries* or *Virgo*. Some geld them at nine days; but I hold it much better at half a years end, then they will be more strong, lively and metalsome. Wean them at a year, or sooner, if you find your Mare sickly, or deficient in Milk; then put them out of the hearing of their Dam, that they may the sooner forget her, and not pine after her; but after he is seven months old, let him not have his fill of suck, about once in two days: Feed him with Pollard, boiled Barley and put him in short sweet Pasture every day.

Back him not till three years old, lest you make him weak in the Loins, or sway-back; besides, it hinders his growth, and generally renders him lame in his Limbs, though you may make him familiar with you, that when you come to do it, it may be done with little trouble. And then consider for what exercise he is best proportion'd and to that chiefly adapt him. In managing him to his Paces, and other Exercises, and in all, it is requisite he should have a good Mouth, trot freely, amble smoothly, lifting up his Legs in trotting neither too high nor too low; that he gallop strongly, be in motion swift, and in ground apace.

Directions for the better Ordering a Horse design'd for Exercise as, Hunting, Travel, &c.

In these cases, the day and night before the day you intend to set out, give him a due proportion of Provender, litter him very well, and let him be clean rubbed down; lead him not abroad, but give him warm Water in the Stable; rub and chafe into his Joynts, Neats-foot Oyl, Trotter-oil, Dogs-grease: In the morning let him have Oats and Beans, but no Hay: if he be brisk and lively, Water him not before you ride him out of the Stable, then ride him a mile or two a wracking pace, and

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 21

When well heated, ride an Amble, Trot, or other Pace, at your discretion; and coming in to your Inn or Stage, wipe off the sweat before you rub him down: This Knife may be made of a piece of a Scyth or broken Sword: then give him a proportionable allowance of Provinder, somewhat more than usual.

If he be any thing hot, give him warm Water, otherwise cold Water will do as well; and bringing him home, serve the like measures; put on his Cloth, and tuck dry cloths between his Girts and Body; let him stand in the stable about two hours, then toss a Knop of Hay into the stall, and soon after give him about two quarts of Oats and split Beans, among which scatter a little Hempseed well cleansed, and when he comes to the last Bait, give him warm Water and Oatmeal, light up his Litter, and let him take his rest: And thus ordering, if he be not a desperate Horse, he will perform what you put him to, to your content.

Instructions as to Saddling and Bridling a Horse, much approved.

If the Horse be wild and skittish, impatient of the Saddle and Trench, and when they are offer'd to make him familiar with the sight of them, always hang them near the door in the Stable: Offer it till you see some willingness in him to accept it; girt the Saddle on gently, and put wisps between his Body and the Girts; put on an easie Bridle first, and so a harder by degrees; in a fair day carry him on plain ground, trot him round you, and sometimes check him with your Voice, strike him a little with your whip, and lay your weight on the Saddle without mounting. Shake and strike the Stirrups against his sides, and do such other things as may usually happen in riding; by these means you will become familiar with him, and he with you: Then take off the slight and easie Bridle you first try, and gird the Saddle hard; wash his Mouth with Ale and Water, and put into it a full-mouth'd Trench Bit, so drawing the Reins over his Head, lay them on the Saddle, and then now and then a gentle pull, that he may feel it, and then champ on it; fasten then Martingals from the Chaulbands

22 *The Gentlemans Compleat Jockey*

bands to the Girts, yet with some slackness, unless be apt to startle and toss up his Head, then fasten a broad piece of Leather about his Neck, at his Withers, and before the middle of his Windpipe, about six inches beneath his Throple, between which and his Neck draw the Martingals, to prevent his ducking down his head; and this will make him carry his Neck Archwise, like a Swan, and add much to his comeliness. And thus use him nine or ten days before you actually attempt to back him,

The best Method for Backing a Horse.

Having made your Horse patient of the Saddle and Trench, carry him abroad, then make many offers to mount, by putting your Foot in the Stirrup, at length leap on his Back, sit fast, and keep your Legs close to his sides, give him a little head, and draw him on Ploughed Ground, where let him run till he sweats, then breathe him again, then cherish him; shake your Legs and Stirrups, keep his head straight, and his Neck Archwise, yet venture not to ride him far before he is familiar; after this feed him with Bread or Grass, if he will take it out of your hand. Having thus done three or three Mornings or Evenings, lay by the Trench, Cavesson and Martingals; let another ride out before you, on a well managed Horse, and ride him slow or fast as you see him disposed, letting him go equal with the other Horse, but not before him, till well perfected to bear his Burthen.

T H E

Compleat Horseman :

OR, TRUE

A R T of Horsemanship,

In all its

Parts and Perfections ;

Under fundry Heads.

And first of all,

Brief Introduction to this Undertaking,
to render it more apt to be understood by
the *R E A D E R*.

BEfore I come to speak of the Action, wherein the true Understanding hereof is most proper, I purpose to give a little further Instruction; and first of the Voice: When you mind to help your horse therewith, it must be with a most mild and cheerful; as to say, *Hey, bey; bola, bola; so boy, so; bup, bup; enough, enough, no more;* and many other such-like; but a correction is clean contrary, when with a terrible and thundering Voice; whereas in cherishing, the most mild and sweet Voice is used, as, *My good Boy, so my good boy,* with an Inclination of tending your Body to him, and such-like Encouragements. So as also the sound of the Voice

24 The Gentlemans Compleat Jockey.

Voice to be used, as well as a Voice pronounced, by giving a chirk with the Tongue, which may be called clacking, pronouncing whereof the tip of the Tongue striketh the roof of the Mouth: And so also there is another sound of the Voice, as *Hah-balo*. The next is the Hand, the true use and government whereof is the Ground of the whole Art; and as for the Bridle and the Rod, they are but dead and senseless Instruments, without all use, when they are not appointed for the right one, of the temperate and steady Hand bearing upon a firm and moderate stay, neither too much slacking, nor too much drawing in, every good Horse causeth a true and just Rein, bearing a steadiness, with a light and sweet Mouth in all actions; so whatsoever the Horse doth, is both easie, ready, and perfect, and being done with delight, must of necessity be well done, because it best pleaseth both Man and Horse, neither of them being moved to any perturbation, grief, or pain, and as for the rod and wand being instruments only for the hand, how and when they are to be offered, used, or not used, and for the Bridle which the *Italians* properly call, *Il manico del timone*, the handle of the sterne, we shall for the present pass them by.

The third thing is the Legs, wherein the use of the calves of the Legs, the Heels, the Stirrup, and the Spur are to be handled, I shall, to avoid repetition and all manner of tediousness, refer them also to their proper places, and at present divide this our immediate concernment into certain general Grounds or Rules, to follow which the Rider may have daily use in teaching the whole Art to his Horse.

For as a young Scholar is to be taught, so a young Horse in the beginning is to be managed, whereby all their Actions might bring delight and admiration to the Beholders, and this must be done by mild and slow teaching, not too much, for a Horse may be wearied with long teaching at one time, but giving him often breath, high keeping, courage, often rewarding, cherishing, using great familiarity, and observing he has no change of the Rider till he is perfect, no change of bit, nor rough bit, no cutting or pulling of his nose or mouth, but gentleness to render him easie.

ease, no beating nor whipping, no violence or passion, but proceed with all manner of imitation of Nature's delight, this maketh all the Horses actions more then wonderful, because Nature hath a natural love to it self, and an innate hatred to all things that are Enemies to the same, which is plainly testified by that natural sympathy and antipathy, which may be observed in all Creatures, as the Lamb which never had experience of the Wolf's cruelty, yet at the first sight of him doth tremble and fly for fear,

Of Correction.

Secondly, That the Rider never correct his Horse, but when gentle means and cherishing will not prevail, for no doubt but that he will willingly yield by gentle means, if it be made sensible unto him, what, how, and when to do, but that Horse that will not be moved by gentle means, let the Rider assure himself that he is of a bad Nature, but if any thing shall happen wherein of necessity correction is to be used; but if he offend, in the instant that he erreth, correct him, wherein how many do offend, all Mens eyes are Witnesses, beholding the common Horse-breakers, and ignorant Rider to minister violent correction, when the beholder cannot so much as find a cause, nor himself express the reason, but error evermore taketh that for truth which is false, so as it plainly appeareth, that when a Horse hath been taught, and yet notwithstanding erreth in his discipline, correct him for error, but not for ignorance, which renders the Rider either to be mad, or as ignorant as the Horse.

Teaching, not fit for such Horses, as Nature hath not framed fit to be taught.

Thirdly, That all Riders lose no time in teaching of good Horses, but as for club-headed, distorted, ugly-countenanced, fleshy, gouty-lim'd, short thick-necked, fleshy-chopped, having their heads set to their necks as a hog, long fore-parted, narrow, shallow-breasted, and evil-shap'd Jade turn them either to the Cart, Plough, or other servile Employments, for every particular Nature, (that is the temperatu.

26 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

perature of the Elements in every particular Body, without all contradiction) causeth and maintaineth the particular action of the Body wherein it is; and such shaped Horses were never compounded or framed of a true temperature of the Elements, and therefore impossible to be reduced to perfection of Action, otherwise than by abuse and great force, which Nature abhorreth, and that is but for a small time, such as these made use of do fully the glory of the Kingdom, disparage the judgment thereof, discourage many Gentlemen, either to become Breeders, Riders, or Maintainers of Horses, and cast mists over the perfections of our English Riders.

Of the Bridle, Saddle, and bringing the Horse to the Block; the mounting and seat of the Rider, and of the Ring and first entering on that Exercise.

When the Horse is made gentle, familiar and fit for the Rider to teach, put on a head-stall or cavetane over his nose, with a pair of strong reins, but so loose and easie for his nose, as may neither hurt nor abate his courage, or his quick and fresh feeling, and in a most gentle manner set a saddle upon him, with an upright short pommel, so as that the true use of the Hand may not be hindered or injured, the bolsters whereof should be broad in the top, to inclose the thigh, and yet to bear so slope that the knee be not pinched, neither the thigh kept from the true resting-place; the seat whereof should be of a reasonable length and largeness, the bolsters behind bearing forward to inclose and support the thigh to the foremost bolsters, the straps broad and strong, with broad girths, and very strong and broad buckles, cross girded, so as the saddle may rest firm on his back, whereby the seat will be easie, sure and certain without motion, leaving the near stirrop-leather almost half a hole longer then the right stirrop, and altho the Horse be gentle, yet because he hath a new Master and Rider not known unto him, being neither assured of himself, nor of that his Rider would have him to do, so as it may be truly said, he is not himself, but that he is troubled in mind, therefore to keep him from fear and perturbation, I would have a quiet laid Horse also saddled to be

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 27

and before him, and then bring them both to the Block, but the old Horse first, and then the Colt, at which time let the Rider use all the mild and gentle words to the young Horse, making the reins of the bridle even and just, holding them in his left hand, not stiff, nor altogether remiss or loose, and as soon as he is mounted on his back, let him sit quietly there a while, least any sudden motion should breed any perturbation in the Horse, until the Rider has settled himself in the saddle, his nose directly answering the Horse's croup betwixt his ears, his legs hanging strait down, neither thrusting down the toe, nor lifting up the heel, but with his foot with such evenness in the stirrup, as if he stood upon the ground, the stirrup-leathers rather short than long, winding his toes something nearer to the Horse's heel than the heel, holding the reins even with his crest, and the point of the withers, a little above the main, with his thighs and knees close to the saddle, and his feet resting in the stirrup in due place, not too far thrust into the stirrup, with an upright and strait body; his ridge-bone answering the ridge-bone of the Horse, so as the Horse and Rider may ever seem to be as one body in all motions, during which time let the Rider claw the Horse with his hand, to remove from him all fear or hard conceit of his riding, that done, let him go forward about two paces freely and softly, and stay again, making much of him, and softly and quietly to the place where he intendeth to tread out a ring, all which must be done by the Rider, gently and without fear, and as he must be thus used in going forward, so must he be used in treading and pacing the Ring, in some new plowed ground, that is moist and of mould, where first let the old Horse enter betwixt two furrows, so far as the Rider may have space and mould enough, and follow with the young Horse close to him, which will cause him the willinge to go, because he is directed and guided by the old Horse, by which means he will not be in any way discouraged; then let the old Horse (the young Horse following) enter on the right Hand, overthwart the furrows, and tread out twice together a round ring, coming in a circuit about thirty paces, and being come about

28 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

the second time where he began, let him tread out the line ring on the left hand, and after he hath gone twice about let him begin again on the left hand, and so continue until he has gone four times about the left ring, and the right six times, that done, let him go fare and softly out of the self-same furrow where he began, about thirty or forty paces, and there stand still, keeping his head and his body right in the path, remembring always to have one go by to signifie his true performance, and to help if need be, and then let him go very gently back from the place he came and there let the Rider alight, and make much of him, coying him, giving him a little grass, hay, or bread in his mouth, to procure and win love, and thus let him be used for two days, with a Horse before him, and after him; let him then lead and begin himself, to tread and pace the ring in this gentle manner for the space of ten days, keeping temperate, staid and firm hand upon the reins, with a sweet feeling stay, carrying his forehead as Rams do, when they go to fight, whereby he will not only rein well, but bear his head staid, just and right, and when he knoweth what to do, and that for it he is always cherished, he will strive to do it faster and faster; through the Rider's continuall keeping of his hand steady, the Horse will do it with a wonderful pride and delight, by giving him liberty, but a too hasty treating of the Horse will work the contrary in his exercises, &c.

Of Trotting in the Ring, and other Paces to be taught the Horse, to bring him to be manageable and fit for proper Services, &c.

In the pacing of the ring, the Rider must not carry an over hard hand to dull the sense, but so temperately that the feeling may be always fresh, otherwise by the violent haling and much galling his Nose, where he'd willingly have ease, to avoid it, he will set his head and his neck awry, the true use whereof is, that standing in the furrow just as straight with his Body, the Rider moves him gently to forwards, and in the very motion turns him on the right hand, by drawing very softly the right rein shorter with his right

ep.

the like
about
he untill
the right
of the
erty pa
s body
go by
be, and
came
him
d in
be use
m; le
he r
eping
a swee
n the
t bea
what
strive
ntima
a woo
t a to
y in b
ough
pro
ry an
tely
vies
y ha
ry, the
st an
to
e rig
with h
right

right hand, low under the pommel of the Saddle, whereun-
to if he yeild (as no doubt but he will) especially having
dred the same before ; let the Rider presently make much
of him, neither drawing nor slacking the rein : At which
time of his doing, both for the ease of the Rider and
the Horse, if need shall be, let some skilful Person,
his Keeper were most fit, come on his left side to his
fore Shoulder, and thrust him in by little and little, and
go by the Rider also by the Calf of the left Leg, and the cluck
of his Tongue to be a help to make him go forward : If
the Horse be such an one as I have describ'd, he will do it ;
but if he should not in the very motion of the turn, then
let the Rider draw the Rein with his Hand as before, whe-
ther it be on the right hand, or on the left, all which must
be done by gentle dealing, so as the Horse may hope for
rest and quietness, whereby he will be ready to do what-
ever his Rider will ; but if he be a Jade, or of an evil
disposition by Nature, for my own part, I esteem him not
of any worth, not fit to be kept.

Having spoken of pacing the Horse in the Ring, it fol-
loweth, that after ten days expir'd, the Horse be taught
to trot the Ring, which must be begun in as slow and as
gentle a trot as he was in his first beginning of pacing ; en-
crease his Ring-turns by two and two every day, until he
make ten turns for the left Ring, and twelve for the right,
which will augment his swiftness, whereof he should be
restrained, until he be most perfect, and then he will do is
with the greatest grace and pride that may be imagined,
which is the true Property and Quality of all Art, ever-
more to affect and to effect Perfection ; during which time
of beginning of trotting, he may not be ridden with a
Wand, nor wear any Bit, until he be most perfect in his
trot, stop, and turn well on both hands, ; and not by any
means suffer'd to gallop, until that he can also perfectly
advance : By taking of this course he will be just in his
pace, and trot and stop with a staid Head and Neck, be-
sting the chief lustre and goodness that Nature and Art
ordeth.

Wherefore when you begin to trot the Ring, be sure
that

that at the first he is moved thereunto as gently as quietly as you can devise, and so in every Action whatsoever, upon a restrained, temperate, and firm hand, with a sweet Stay, and with a true Rein, that is, that his Nose be just under his Forehead, neither too much out, nor too much in, which is the just placing and setting of his Head, and will make him have a pleasant Mouth, when he cometh to wear the Bit, in which consisteth the chief point of Horsemanship, because he is so to be maintain'd in all his Actions: This is most easie to be done and continued, if the Horse be of perfect shape and spirit; but if he should make resistance, for that he is either rammage or evill broken, then trot him swiftly with quickness of Voice, Rod and Spur, for the time of his trotting is the fittest time to make him forget his Toyls, and to attend his way; and if all this will not help, then spare not to gallop him; and if this fails, then be sure he will be a Jade from the beginning to the end, for a Horse of a good temper and perfect shape can never be of so bad a nature and quality.

I shall next tell how to make the Rider perfect in Stop. After he hath ended the number of his Ring-turns, which is, to trot his Horse right out in the middle Furrow, betwixt the Rings, until he come to the place of stop, and there to make a pretty stay, keeping his Body right in the path, wherein if the whole Body or any part stand overthwart, seek not at first to correct him for it thro' your too much Passion, but let a Foot-man direct him to stand right in the Path, as we said before, by thrusting in that part which stands out of order, or that he may cause the Horse to go farther in the same Path, and stop him, holding that Rein straighter on that side whereon he most forceth his Head than the other, which will enforce him to keep right; which when he yeldeth, ever cherish him; and after it will be convenient to trot and stop him on a Ground that is a little steep, which something falleth, and immediately riseth; but when he is perfect, then he may do it on a Ground very steep. But to teach him to go back, you must keep a firm staid hand on him, without giving him any Liberty, and then gently striking him on the Neck with

his Rod, in that instant say, *Back, back*, but if he
refuse, let a Foot-man with a rod gently strike him on
the Knees, and so, by the gentle pulling in of the Rider's
hand, and fair means, oblige him to it, to stand still.
The proper Use of the Wand, Bit, and Spur, for the well
teaching a Horse, and to bring him to his Paces and
Management.

Having shew'd how to ride a Horse without a Wand,
Bit, or Spur, I will now shew you how to manage all three,
together with the true use of the Hand upon the Bit, one
of the principal pieces of Horsemanship.

First therefore, when he that rides with a Wand, let
him take it warily, that the Horse be not frightened there-
with; and to ascertain the Horse thereof, presently after
he has receiv'd it, to y and scratch him about the Neck with
the end thereof: And for the carrying, it must be in
the right hand, with the Joynt upright, and when he
must use it, let the point fall close unto him as occasion
shall require; but in his management of it, let him lay
his hand on his right Thigh, and the Wand across the
Horse's Neck; and when he hath made his course, and
turned on the right hand, then before the end of his se-
cond course, when he is almost ready to turn on the left
hand, let him lift up his hand and rod, and hold the point
right forward on the right side against his Eye, and as he
changeth turns, so let him change his rod of the one side
and of the other; but if his Horse will not turn on the
side he would have him, let him strike him on the con-
trary side; and when he is any way disorder'd, let him
carry the Wand on the contrary side; and when he would
have him carry his forepart right, strike him on the Shoul-
der or Fore-legs; and when he would have him light be-
hind, strike him on the rump and hanches. And thus
much for the Use of the Wand, as occasion shall serve.

Now for the use of the Bit, which is an Instrument only
used and directed by the hand, and because the Ground
the Art of Riding depends wholly upon the use and
government of the hand, being guided by Reason and

Discourse, so as the *Horse*, in all Motions and Actions, and ought to answer to that Motion which the hand moveth; I must not pass it over lightly.

First therefore, let the Bit that you first bit your Horse withal be gentle and pleasant, yet so, that the gentleness cause him not to despise the Rider, nor the hardness drive him to despair; for you must understand, that Knowledge always presupposeth Reason, and Reason Sence and Sence and Reason; all which consists in a true mediocrity; and therefore amongst the most learned Precepts that were written in the Temple of *Apollo* in *Greece*, this was in the second place, *Nothing too much*.

For, if you press him with the Bridle, if he carry his head well, yet must you presently ease your Bridle-hand, and make much of him, because he sheweth himself obedient to you and whensoever he doth any thing well, and with delight, you must be very careful not to vex him, but ever so to win him, that he may be willing to please you.

So likewise when he bears a firm hand with a stay, that thereby the Horse brings in his head, and yields to his hand, yet he must shorten the Reins of his Bridle till his head be settled in its due place, that is, neither to carry his Forehead too much out nor too much in, and still to maintain him in that form in all his doings, yet not so that it exceed mediocrity or temperature, but remain light on the hand with a sweet mouth.

Thus having shew'd the Rider, that it must be done by keeping this order, I proceed.

Let him stay his Horse temperately upon an even hand, as his resistance shall require, without giving any other Liberty, then with his Rod to strike him gently upon the bowing of the Neck, provoking him mildly with the Spur on that side on which he most wryeth his Buttock, to the end that he may go just, until he draw back one of his fore Feet, which if he do, make much of him, and then stay a while and do the like, drawing only the Bridle, for the former cherishing will make him to understand, and then make him go lightly back with both the fore Legs, when he is touched

touched on the Neck with the Rod, saying with a loud
 Voice, *Back*; at which Voice, with the feeling of the Rod
 and drawing of the Bridle, he will go back to the Rider's
 desire: And always after, when he is out of the due
 and true stay upon the Bridle, let him do the like, that is,
 to go back in form aforesaid; and altho' some disorder be
 committed, let not the Rider despair, for he shall find
 him easily won to a good Mouth, by this use of a tempe-
 rate and firm Hand, which is by the mediocrity of slack-
 ing and drawing, properly named a *sweet Stay*, making him
 light upon the hand, champing the Bit with great pleasure,
 and a stay'd Head in due place, the true Tokens whereof
 are just Reins, staid, and a light-born Head with pleasure
 on the Bit, being Properties inseparable in every perfect-
 shap'd Horse's Actions. But because it may seem very dif-
 ficult to have a continuance of Perfection in every action,
 altho' it is common upon stop, or standing still, to be in
 order, yet perhaps, upon motion, he will leave playing
 upon the Bit, and bear upon the head, especially upon the
 main courier, which proceeds from the want of true Know-
 ledge how to maintain and continue the hand just and firm
 with a sweet stay, so as that he may take pleasure on the
 Bit: And therefore how to maintain a Horse both in furi-
 ous and quiet doings, is to be consider'd of: If then that
 at any time he make any disorder, note it diligently, so
 stay him, and make him go backward; for in going back,
 he will bring himself to his right order agen: Then present-
 ly make much of him, and forthwith move him forwards
 fair and gently, till he come to the place of stop. And
 as he must be thus used in going forward, so he must be
 used in treading of the Rings, first gently upon the pace,
 upon the trot, and upon the gallop, in practising whereof
 he must precisely observe that it be done with a tempe-
 rate, staid, and firm hand, otherwise he will gape, thrust
 his Tongue upon the Bit, or over the Bit, to defend him-
 self, thrust his head out suddenly, pluck it in disdainful-
 ly, or else shaking or moving his head one way or other,
 to be freed from the pressing of the intemperate hand,
 which is to him uncouth and contrary to Nature the

which Art should evermore labour to please. The true form and practice of drawing the Bridle is also to be learnt; which is, that being mounted in the Saddle, let the Rider draw the Reins equal; and if the Horse know not the Bit, then let the Bit be very slack, and let him hold the Reins in his left hand, with the little finger and Ring-finger between, under the Pommel of the Saddle, as near the Withers as he can, and then with the right hand draw the Reins softly and equally together through the left hand, so as the Standers-by can scarcely perceive it, the which he must not remove until he feel the Horse to stay upon the Bit, and there hold them without slackning or further drawing, until he perceive whether the Head stand in true form; which if it be not, then let him a little yield his left hand again, and standing so a pretty while, bring his left hand to his former place again, where the Horse made the first stay upon the Bit; then let him draw the Reins with his right hand somewhat more through the left, as before, but so little and gently, as scarcely to be perceived, for so must all the motions of the Hand be, and then keep it firm and staid a pretty while, and if he yield too very little, let him keep his hand still at one stay, neither slackening nor drawing it, whereby he will feel the ease that he hath got by yielding; and then presently make much of him; But if it so happen, that the Reins fall slack, let him not remove his left hand, but draw them through his left hand, as before, for they must not be slack until they stay again upon his right hand, whereunto whensoever he yieldeth, make much of him, continuing still in this manner to sollicit him till his Head be in its due place, that is, neither too much out, nor too much in; after which, if he bear not light, let his Rider strike him gently on the Knees of his fore Legs, to make him to go back, whereby he will bring in his head, and then will the Bit move, and his Hand find ease; but let him be very careful at that instant to keep his hand so firm as that he neither slack nor draw in, to the end he may feel and receive the ease of his own motion of yielding, which willingly he will not loose, it being delightful to his

his nature, but take some pleasure to fill the Bit in his Mouth, and go backward with it to the which, when the Rider finds, are tokens of the winning of his Mouth, which to his great satisfaction being run with observati- on of good order, he may be brought to a more conti- nued Perfection. Thus I have shew'd the expert Rider so much as the Art may help him; but if the Shape and Nature of the Horse be opposite and repugnant, as in the greatest num- ber of Horses, it is to no purpose; howsoever, for a time it may seem to be taught; yet questionless it cannot be of any continuance.

But because in the whole Art of Riding there is no one thing more difficult than to make a Horse trot just; And that the Perfection thereof is the Perfection of all other of his Doings I purpose to give further Rules.

Particular Rules and Directions for the Management of a Horse, to train him up to a good and commendable Trot; being the Foundation of all.

1. Let the Rider observe, that when he is teaching his Horse herein, or any other Lesson, that he do not trouble him with any other thing at that time, neither suffer him to begin to learn any other.
2. That he do not suffer any other to ride him until he be perfected by himself in such Lessons as he taught him, lest he should be confus'd by the diversity of Teachers, and their manner of Teaching.
3. That when he is brought to a just Stay of Hand, and Assurance of the Bit, that then the Rider is to maintain him therein to a full perfection.
4. When he is out of order, then let him stay him, and make him go back, as before was mentioned.
5. When he is in order, then let him make much of him, and stay not long, but with a firm and gently put him into his Trot again.
6. If he continue in his good order, cherish him, gui- ding his Body, with a pleasant and gentle motion of the Caves of your Legs move him to do it more expeditiously,

which

which if he be of a good nature, he will speedily perform; always remembering to keep a firm hand, unless he bring in his Head.

7. if his Trot continue not light upon your hand, stay him, and cause him to go back, which will bring him in order again, and then gently put him into his Pace, and so to his Trot, as before; which being well done, cheer and delight him with all the sweetness that may be, so that the Rider may ever win his Love thereby; guide him home by some leading Lines, and give him a little Grass or Hay out of your hand; tickle, scratch him, and speak to him most loving words, which will make him his next Exercise do all things to his Rider's greatest content; and within twenty days, or thereabouts, he will Pace and Trot in such order, as that the Rider may always afterwards trot him most swiftly in the Rings or in the Manage.

8. In his swift Trot, by all means keep your true Seat and firm Hand, so that he lose not that excellent form and grace before prescribed; but do not Gallop him till he be just and perfect in his swift Trot, and then out of that trot, to put him to a swifter gallop in the large Rings, even to the Stop: But beware you draw not your hand hastily to you, but by a little sway of your Body, Back and Hand together, and stay your hand there until he retreat a step or two, and there stay him, and suffer him not to go forward, and at that instant to make much of him, and so let your hand and body reassume the same place again.

9. If he should then offer to go forwards, stay him with the like sway, and then alight, and lead him home, making much of him, as you did before.

10. I dare to assure the Rider of the right use of what hath been said, and of the success thereof, therefore let him follow his Practice, and continue it; let him pace his Horse overthwart some deep Fallow as fast as he can for half an hour, but suffer him not by any means to trot, keeping his hand in a firm and temperate stay, as before, and if he still find his head in due place, his carriage

light

light and pleasant upon the Bit, he may assure himself that he hath gain'd the perfection of the Hand, and the true use thereof, for the teaching and making of a young Horse; wherein observe, that if he be of a perfect shape, his Head will be in the due place, and light upon the Bit.

Of the Manner of a Horse, with further Instructions, &c.

I now intend to discourse a little of the Horse that is already taught, and brought to perfection; with him the expert Rider hath small need to make use of any Rod, or other help, but to keep his true, just, and perfect Seat, because his Horse, by the least token of the Bridle or Spur, will do all things in such time and measure, as the Beholder will judge the Man and Horse to be but one Body, one Mind, and one Will: And therefore, how the Reins should be carried, placed, and used, is the only thing to be spoken of: The Reins he must hold in his left hand, placing the little finger betwixt the two Reins, and the thumb close upon the Reins, so as the hand remove not from the Crest of the Horse, for by the motion of the hand it is signified to the Horse which way you would have him turn, slackening it on the other: The Order and Manner whereof hath been, and is yet diversly used of the best Horsemen, and therefore I leave it to every man's use, as he findeth it most fit. But in the running at the Tilt, where the Horse neither doth nor can turn, the Rider must not draw the Bridle towards the Tilt, but only strain the Rein that is next the Tilt, to make him carry his head towards it.

(1.) Because the true shape and goodness of the nature of the Horse, is it that Art attendeth and worketh upon, in those Horses the Rules of Art have Perfection with continuance; so as the Horse that is of perfect shape, and well trought, shall not endanger Wind, or Limb, or Deformity of Body.

(2.) His Person shall never be in peril by rearing or running away.

(3.) Nor shall the Rider never be grieved with heavy bearing upon his hand, but perform all with great delight.

Neither

Neither shall he need Canellan, Mustoley, or Martingale, or such-like, but only false Reins only being used. (14.) And lastly, his Teaching will manifest the difference betwixt the true Knower, and ignorant Riders, which will be perceiv'd by the Doings the Horse doth present and expresse when he would appear most beautiful, and thereby render both the expert Reader, not the ignorant, and himself, to appear most nobly, with such delight to the Beholders, that they will seem to be riv'd with it; all which is attain'd by Discretion, taking of Time, with Moderation and Temperance, which is little regarded, and of very few, who will rather chuse to ride out of order, and that with such extremity of Spurs and Rods, that for want of Breath they commit many strange Disorders, whereby the poor Horse is cruelly tormented, having no other to ride him than one without Discretion.

After your Horse hath perfectly learned swiftly to trot, and to stop, and as well to go back, then ought he to be taught rightly to advance; which is by lifting up both his fore-feet just and even together, like to a Goat, some what above the Ground, and so to let them fall even and just twice or thrice together, the true doing whereof will cause him to make a just perfect manage, and a ready and true turn: for the attaining whereof, trot him gently forty or fifty foot in some plain way, then give him a just stop, which he will truly perform, because he hath before perfectly learned the same; let him always keep a steady, pleasant, and perfect hand on the Bridle, then instantly, with a mild Voice, say, *Hup, hup*, striking him at that instant with his Wand on the right Shoulder, and also with both the Calves of the Legs together, but spur him not, if possibly without it he will advance; and this with a little labour and patient teaching, no doubt but he will attempt to do twice or thrice together, which if he do, then in that instant make much of him (although he did it very meanly) then let him pause a little time, and give him breath, and trot him again in the same manner the like distance of ground, and as before, so gently.

use him again; but if he do not better every time he is taught, he must be still solicited until he do better.

And after that he can in plain ground perfectly advance, then teach him gently, upon the hanging knole of a Pill, to bring him perfectly to stop, and run sliding upon his Buttocks or hinder Legs, which is very handsom, beautiful, and graceful for Manage and Turn; and therefore let him do it before he is taught any other Lesson then what is shewn; and when he will do it upon a soft trot, upon the swift trot, and afterwards upon a soft gallop, and not before, but never upon a swift gallop, until he be perfect both in Turn and Manage. If he advance too high, and not just and even, with a good grace, as he ought, then may the fault speedily be found, and easily amended by immediately correcting him with one even stroke over his Legs, the Wand again order'd and convey'd out of his sight, with a sweet steady hand on the Bridle: Few Tryals will soon amend and perfect what is ails in the Horse.

And whereas some appoint many helps for Horses that are harder to turn on the one side than on the other, (although I confess their general Desire is more apt to the left hand than to the right) yet to a Horse of good Nature and perfect shape, a little Art will speedily teach him to teach others.

Half-turnings, Doubles, Chambetta, Manage, Courser, &c.

It now remaineth to shew when to make the *Half-turn*, and the *Double*, the *Chambetta*, the *Manage*, to pass a *swift Courser*, the *Corvet*, and such-like.

After he is very perfect in those I have set down, he is to make a true and a just half and double turn, which should be in this manner: First, when the Rider hath gently trotted, stopped, and advanced his Horse the length of a short Courser, let him teach him gently and mildly to make the half turn, (beginning always on the right hand) that is, for the Rider to turn him with the help of his left Leg, that his Head may stand that way which

before

before his Tail stood; it is called a half-turn, because he maketh but half a circle; but if in the turn he set his Head that way it stood at the first, that is a whole circle, and therefore called a whole-turn: But let him first do the half-turn perfect, which must be done by helping him with his Voice and Calf of his Leg, and not at first by any means to have him spurred, if he can be otherwise brought unto it, because a Spur is a correction which is not to be used, but at that instant when he hath committed an Error, and not while he remains ignorant what to do, by which means undoubtedly, being a sensible Creature, he will perceive his Errors and Offences, whereby with little correction he will easily amend any Fault: Let the Rider never go about to make him despair, but continually encourage him; for having formerly attain'd a perfection of a just, even and swift Trot in the Rings, (the very true ground of all other Lessons,) he will easily turn on the right hand, setting his Head that way his Tail stood; the which being perfectly attained, then close it up with another half-turn on the same hand, with the prescrib'd helps, setting his Head and all his Body in the same way it was at first; so give him Breath, and make much of him, then make him do as much on the left hand, and to change from hand to hand, leaning always on the right.

1. In the doing whereof, observe whether he bring on the contrary Leg orderly.

2. That he do it after the first bound of advancing, and after the second or third bound.

3. That the Rider always, as hath been said, begin on the right hand, and end on the right.

4. That after he is perfect in doing of the whole turn, that he make him to do it swiftly and roundly, without stop or stay of the half-turn, and speedily in closing of every whole-turn, and in as narrow a compass as may be.

5. After he is perfect, as aforesaid, give him on each hand three whole turns, whereof let the first be very fair and softly, beginning at the right hand, and ending at the right; in performing whereof, the Rider must always help him with his Tongue, his Rod and his Leg, by which

continual use, before he teacheth him any other Lesson ; (which should never be done, unless he be perfect in the Lesson he is learning) so that the Rider shall in the end , with discreet and temperate teaching, bring him to an Admirable Perfection, keeping time and measure, that the one be not swifter than the other ; if either, the last, which for the most part is as speedy as perfect.

Now, to proceed to the Managing of a Horse, the true signification whereof is to be rightly understood, by such as intend to be expert in *Horsemanship*, for to be ignorant of the *Terms*, is to be ignorant of the *Art* ; I take it to be a compound word of the word *manus* and *ago*, (the Hand in this Art being the Instrument of Instruments) doth guide and govern the Horse to every Action, and therefore may fitly be said *Mannagere*, or as the *Italians* properly call it, *Maneggiare*, which is as much as skilfully to handle.

And therefore when the Rider shall exercise the Horse perfectly and gracefully in his place, Trot, Stop, Advance, Double or Single-turn, Courcir, Gallop, Leap, Caperiole, Corvet, Assault, or whatsoever the Hand, being the principal Order, or *prime mover*, may truly and aptly be called *Manage* ; which cannot so rightly be done without the general knowledge of the Practice of the Precepts of the whole *Arte*.

And altho' many worthy Horsemen have and do only rest and refer Managing to Galloping, and to bring a Horse to and fro in one self-same path, by half-rest, whole-rest, and when the Rider manageth with a half-rest, causing the Horse, at the end of every managing path, after he hath stop'd, to advance twice together, and at the second bound to turn and rest one bound ; doth not the Rider therein exercise the Trot, the Stop, the Advance, and the Turn, which he formerly learned, and according to the same manner ? Or, when he manageth with the whole-rest, and turns him at the third bound, or manage him without the rest, by turning him immediately upon the Stop, without any tarryance or rest at all , which only is most common with us in *England* ; and yet the managing of the half-

half-reit is most necessary for the attaining of perfection; doth not the Rider keep and maintain the Horse in one path, one place of stop, making him keep his Ground, and therein become his Head, Neck, Legs, and his Body just, closing his turn roundly, and in a narrow room, with true time and measure in every action, as he hath been formerly taught? How then can managing be properly refer'd to one only Action, when it is the perfect acting of every action and Lesson he hath learned; wherein when the Rider's Horse is most ready and perfect he may encrease the often doing of his Lessons as he will, and make an alteration of his Turns and Exercises, to find out the truth of his Obedience: and when they are first artificially, and then exactly perform'd, then may the Rider be truly said to be a perfect Manager.

Summary principal things yet remaining to be known, by such as would be Experts, or Compleat Horsemen, relating to the True Managing.

Now are to be shewed what are the principal things that are to be observ'd in the true Managing of a Horse.

He is to be taught his Manage with a soft Trot, and not with a Gallop; my reason is, because thereby he may be at the first sensible of Apprehending what he is to do, and how to do, and that gracefully, by the bowing of his Hoofs behind, by turning round with the *Chambetta*, which is by holding up the fore-foot on the side he should turn, whilst he brings over the contrary Leg, and setteth it not down until he have closed his turn, so as thereby he shall carry both his fore-feet above the ground, not traying upon the ground, which is disgraceful.

When the Rider teaches his Horse (which is after he can stop well) let him advance before, and turn readily on both hands, then with a soft Trot come to the place of stop about twenty paces in length, and make him advance twice together, and at the second bound turn him on the right hand, (for on that hand you must always begin) helping him so, that by bowing his Hoofs behind, he move his forepart orderly, then immediately in a gentle

the manner trot him back to the place that you came from, and then there, after he hath made his stop, at the second bound of his advancing, turn him on the left hand, observing the like order until the Rider has gone ten or twelve times, and at the last cause him to advance twice together. And thus much for the half-rest, which is to advance thrice, and at the third bound to turn; but be sure he be perfect in one Lesson before you teach him another.

In all the Rider's Managings, let his body still accompany his Horse with a good Grace; and when that he hath very perfectly learned his Manage on a soft Trot, then he may manage him with a Gallop, giving him on each hand one single turn; and a little before he is turned, let the Rider hold his Wand on the contrary side, whereby he will know on what side to turn; and at the stop let the Rider make him to advance, either with his Voice, Rod, or Spur, always being careful to give him breath, evermore beginning with a gentle Gallop until he be perfect; but I wish the Rider so to use and exercise his Horse, that he may be long Master of a good and perfect Horse, and not to spend or spoil him in a little time, in teaching him needless toys, as some ignorant Persons use to do.

After the Horse is perfect in such Lessons as have been formerly taught, and is grown to his full and perfect strength, then let the Rider begin him with a short Courser, in a fair sandy way, and with a lively Voice put him forward, forcing him to run swiftly, roundly, and smoothly, with a steady Head, and lightly to stop himself on his Buttocks; then let him turn him on the left hand, and softly pace him to the other end of the Courser-path, and there stop him, and turn him again to the right hand, and so leave off and rest him. And as this passing Courser or swift Gallop must never be done or taught, until the Horse be most perfect in all the Lessons; so must it be done very sparingly and seldom, at once or twice in a month at the most.

Of the Bound, Leap, and Yerk.

Some have a desire for to have their Horses to Bound, Leap and Yerk; and tho' I know it might be most exactly done by the best-spirited Horses, but tending altogether to their destruction, and a matter rather of foolish delight than of any use, I leave it to the disposition of the Owner, wishing much rather to have such dangerous Exercises omitted than practised, unless that there were more plenty of Horses that are fit for the same, or to be spared to be utterly spoiled: Therefore let not my Reader admire that he meets here with so short Remarks on them.

Of the Caperiole and Corvette.

The difference betwixt these two, is, that the *Caperiole*, or Goats-leap is always in going forwards, and the *Corvette* still in one place: These are to be learned and taught by one Order, but neither of them will ever be learned, and therefore never exactly done, unless the Horse be very perfect for to stop, which must be much bending of the Elbow of the hinder Hoofs or Heels of the Horse. Now the *Corvette* may, in some sort, resemble the dancing of the Bear at a Stake; for when he danceth and pranceth up and down in one place, lifting his forefeet even and just together, seeming to turn if he might be suffer'd; that of the Bear is a proper resemblance of the *Corvette*, the which is never well done, unless the Horse be just and steady of Head and Body, bowing the hams of his hinder Legs, as if he would sit or slide on his Buttocks. And the *Caperiole* is in the same manner, but still going forwards, seeming as though he would yerk behind, by advancing his rump, but doth not; and as he doth it forward, so will he do it backward and side-long.

Now the Rider need not to teach his Horse either of these, until, as hath been said, he be absolutely perfect in those Lessons formerly mention'd, because these Lessons are only learned by stopping and advancing; the which if he have once perfectly and long practised, then Trot him sundry days upon some hanging Ground, and upon the

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 49

the knole of the Hill on the same ground; make him to advance twice together, the which he will do, and then help him with the sound of your Lips, to trot two paces farther, and there to stop and advance twice together at the end of the two paces all the length of a hanging Hill downwards, still remembring to cherish him when he does well, and to give him breath, that all his Performances may be done with delight. And if he be helped with the word, saying, *bup*, and with the Rider's Rod, by striking him upon the fore-part of his Shoulders, he will go from stop to stop, advancing both the fore Feet and hinder Loyns, with time and measure, as often as the Rider pleases, and in such a just, even and staid a manner as will be very pleasant to the Beholders.

Now, because I would not have the young Rider to begin any Lesson, but by the direction of a perfect Master, and in that course to continue, so must the young Rider endeavour with himself to know the reason of all his Practices; and therefore he must be sure to be present at the Exercises of the most skilful Horsemen, and, as *Solomon* saith, *Let his Foot tread often upon their Threshold*; let him be acquainted with the best Practitioners, and when he is able rightly to judge, and to make a true difference between good and bad, then let him practise as often as he can, and never doubt to become a *Perfect Horseman*, so as to be able to teach whatsoever is fit for a *Horse* to do, and a *Young Gentleman* to know.

Short Infallible RULES to be Observ'd and Practis'd by every Horseman.

- I. **D**O not gallop your Horse before he can stop well.
- II. Do not run him before he can stop in his Gallop.
- III. Do not swiftly gallop him before he can stop.
- IV. Do not make him a Runner before he be six or seven years old.

46. The Gentlemans Compleat Jockey.

VI. In all his doings, from the beginning to the end, keep his Reins true, and his Head steady; for this Rule is the Foundation of all other Rules.

VII. In the morning early, when he is empty, before he eat any thing, teach and exercise him untill he be perfect; and after, twice or thrice in a week is sufficient.

VIII. In all his teaching and exercise, do it moderately and temperately, and leave him, always after the well-doing of his Lessons, both in breath, and with a good Mouth.

IX. After he is perfect in his Lessons, let the Rider exercise him not always in one place; neither let him confine himself to a just and certain Instant of Time, viz. neither more nor less, neither longer nor shorter.

X. In managing of his Horse, let him not gallop him swiftly at the first, but with a soft pace, and seldom with a gallop.

XI. In correcting of his Horse for an Error, let him correct him even at that instant he commits it.

Order Ways and Methods for the Management of a Horse for War, Travel, Hunting, Racing, &c.

Though those I have mention'd are by all expert Horsemen accounted the best for training up Horses to their exact Paces and Management, because herein native Freedom without Shackles is the most agreeable; yet since some use another method, I shall give a brief account of it, and leave them both indifferently to the choice of those that are to practise herein, viz.

When you are to teach your Horse the true Amble, which is the Ground of all others, lead him a wracking pace in your Hand, and observe the Motion he is most inclinable to, whether Trot, running, bastard-Amble, or others; so mount and wrack him deliberately, by the help of his Mouth-weeks, with his Snaffle smooth and large; and when you have brought him to some Management, to endure the Tramel without stumbling or flying out, form it in this manner:

Take strong Packthread, and twist it into a Cord about the

The Gentleman's Compleat Tackler 47

the thickness of a Jack-line, so firm, that it will not give the least way; let your Hofs or Parts fastned about the Hips be close, soft and immovable, the Backbands light and somewhat broad, that they may not injure the Hofs's Fillets; the length of the side-ropes thirty six inches, but if the Horse be of a long reach, you may add an inch more: Place the Hofs on the small of the fore-leg, and upon the hinder just above the Fetlock, made of fine Girthweb made of Cotton, Flannel, or some such like soft matter, fastned with Neats-Leather Tabs of even lengths, lubb'd with Tallow, and divers holes punch'd in them at an even distance, to pass through the Nooses that are to be on the side-ropes, so that by buckling the Ropes, may be drawn up or let out at pleasure, the Tabs not exceeding ten inches, nor the holes in them four; then let the backbands that are to hold up the Side-cords, if you trammel your Hofs's Legs, be made of Girthweb lined with Flannel; but if only two Legs, Filleting or strong Tape; but observe it keep the side-cords even in a line, without either twitching up or suffering it to fall, for rising shortens the side-cord, and falling makes it apt to entangle the Horse.

The Use of the Tramel.

The Tramel well made, proceed to use it in this manner,

Bring your Horse into a place, that is even free from Dumpers or Stones, and put on the Tramel, your Horse standing as even as may be, not straining forward nor crimping inward, but in a just and even proportion; then laying your hand on the Bridle, by gently straining his Head, oblige him to move forward, compel him to Amble about the Ground chosen very leisurely, using him with much gentleness, and often cherishing him with your Voice, till he feel the Tramel, and begin to be acquainted with what he is to perform: And by this means, though at first he may or stumble he will be brought to it more at leisure, and become familiar with it, if your harshness hinder it. Though it is not amiss, if at first, when he begins to am, you permit the side-ropes to be longer than the measure

48 The Gentlemen's Compleat Jockey.

measure mention'd, to prevent his twitchings; but when he begins to be perfect, have them ever of a constant length, lest the over-length render him a slow Ambler, and the over-length cause him to halt or shuffle.

Times proper to alter the Tramel, and convenient to Mount, &c.

When the Horse can Amble pretty well by hand, change the half-Tramel, by removing it from one side, and placing it on the other; and so, as you see occasion, put on the whole Tramel, till he run pretty swift, without the motions of snapping or stumbling; then try him upon uncertain and uneven ways, up and down hill, and in such Roads as you think you shall after have occasion to ride him: Then having inur'd him to it, mount on his Back, or let another to do it, whilst you stay his Head, and keep him from any inconveniency, and observe well how he treads: After that your self may mount, cherish him often, and so oblige him to mend his pace, till he move with as much agility as you can desire; and forget not between whiles to put on sometimes the half-Tramel, and at other times the whole, shifting often from one side to the other, lest he forget his pace; and in so doing twice or thrice a day, he will in a month or six weeks be brought to good order, and then without a Tramel ride him on the Road, without chusing the Way: Have with you also a half-Tramel, so that if he faulter, alight, and put it on; which will quickly mind him of what you intend he should do.

How to Stop in a full Career, Advance, &c.

To make Horses stop in any Pace, draw suddenly your Bridle hand, straight and steady, Hard and Sharp, and by that means, he will stop Firm and Close, also Even: But if after you have drawn in your Hand he turn Side ways, or more Forward, put him to it again, and when he stops well, attempt to make him Advance upon your stop; that is, rise with his fore-Legs, which is done by a sudden clapping the Calves of the Legs close to his Sides, forbearing to touch him with your Spur, but shake your

Whip

Whip or Switch over him, which will add much Grace to his stopping; and try him till he well understands, and will perform it.

How to oblige Horses to Retire, and endure the various sorts of Bits.

To make him do this, draw him back with a steady Rein, that with his Legs lifted up as in a Trot he may retire, he may suddenly retreat three or four Paces; which in case you design a Horse for War, is a very commendable thing, and indeed in any other, on several Occasions; observe herein to make him do it in a direct Line, not turning to one side or the other, nor suffer him to Shuffle in his retiring, but to take his Legs up even and clever from the Ground.

Having brought him to this, if you design him for War, take away his Trench and Martingal; leave only the Cavezan of three or four Pieces or Joynts to be used, viz. A Joynt in the middle, and a strong Ring fastned to it, and on each side a Joynt with Rings before them, and fasten to them divers Reins, in drawing of which you may use your Horse at command: Or, if this be too hard, put into his Mouth a common Bit, made up with a French Check, fitted to the proportion of the Horse's Neck, for if it be otherwise, there can be no true Management, for the long Check lifts up the Horse's Head, and the short one pulls it down.

Turnings, and strait Turns, &c.

The Turnings are when the Face of the Horse in the motion is kept to the Centre or Post. or tho' he wheel with his Buttocks swiftly, yet keeping his Face properly to the Enemy.

The strait Turns are when he keeps his Buttocks inward, or close to the Center or Post, and bearing about, makes the Circumference with his fore-part advancing a little toward the Enemy, that would avoid him.

To do the first, called the strait Turn, fasten a Rein to the middle of your Cavezan, about three Yards

50 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

in length, and to the other two Rings two Reins somewhat shorter; so Bridled and Saddled bring him to the Post; put the Reins over the Saddle-bolster, and fasten them at such straightness to the Pummel that he may feel them, and if you be then desirous to turn to the Right, take the short Rein on the left hand of the Cavezan, and bring it under the Saddle fore-Bolster up to the Pummel, and fix it at such a straitness that may rather sway his Head from, than to, the Post, his Eyes looking to the Right; then let a Stander-by hold the Rein on the right side of the Cavezan at the Post, moving it so, that the fore-part of your Horse's Body may at full turn about; then take the long Rein in your own Hand, causing the Horse to bear his hinder parts inwards, which may be done by gentle striking him on the outward shoulder and Buttock, as occasion is found, causing him to turn about the Post, his hinder part being the Centre, the fore-part in motion, making the Circumference. Thus use him on the one hand till indifferent perfect, then change the Rein to the other on the outward ring of the Cavezan and so in the like manner teach it him on the other hand; and by so doing Morning and Evening, you may soon bring him to it with a touch of your Switch; observe as he swiftly Trots round, that he place his outward fore-Leg over the inward, and so by degrees, in his Wheeling, oblige him to mend his pace swiftly and distinctly, and in as direct a Compass as can easily or conveniently be performed, till at last he flie with such celerity, that his fore and hinder Legs move equal.

This Lesson perfectly learned, Mount, and let one hold the long Rein, and another the short one, and then with the motion of your Hand upon the left Rein of the Cavezan and Bit, bearing him Head from the Post, and by the motion of the Calves of your Legs and Switch upon his outward Thigh, cause him to bear his hinder parts to the Post, and Exercise him till he perform it as well with you on his Back as he did before; then take away the Cavezan, and Exercise only with the short Rein: And so having brought him to do it at the Post, he will be induced to do it in the open Field without one.

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 51

The strait Turn in keeping his Face to the Post as the Centre, and swiftly flying about with his hinder parts, the Reins both long and short, must be used as before, only you must not give the short Rein any scope, but draw it nearer to the Post; still as he moves about, follow his hinder parts with the long Rein, and observe in his motion whether he bear his hinder Leg one over the other, as is expressed by the four Legs. By the help of your Rod making him bring his hinder part swiftly round the Post, and when he is perfect, Mount him, and cause him to move swift or slow, sometimes, at the Post, and then in open Ground, as you see convenient: These will accomplish him for the Wars, Racing, Hunting, and other Matters.

Particular Observations on Ambling, Racking and Galloping.

Observe as to the fitness of pace, the Horse's motion of his Legs when he takes them from the Ground, and you will perceive in his cross moving what he is properly designed for. *Viz.* If his hinder and fore Leg move together then at one and the same instant, and in this motion the nearer he takes up his Limbs from Ground, the open, even and shorter is his Tread; but if he do it unequal, slovenly, and in a shuffling manner, that denotes Stumbling, Lameness, or some such Imperfection. If he tread Cross or Narrow, it signifies he is subject to Interfering and will hardly be enduced ever to Tread sure. If he takes his steps Askew and Uneven, it denotes him subject to Faint and Tife, unable to perform long Journeys or hard Service. If he treads Long, it signifies him subject to Strains and Over-reaches: And therefore a moderate even pace, and the clever carrying of a Horse's Legs is to be chosen, that your labour in Teaching may not be thrown away. But to Particulars.

As for Ambling.

If you chuse your Horse for Pleasure and Ease, then none is more suitable than this, it being opposite to Trotting; as thus, both the Feet on one side must have equal motion, *viz.* The far fore Leg and the far hinder Leg

52 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

which must move juſt Even, Smooth and Swift, for if the Horſe tread falſe or a wry, it takes away much of the eaſineſs of his Pace; and if Short, then no more Ground is ridded than if he went a round Foot-pace: If he treads Rough, it denotes Rouling in a ſhuffling manner, and is a falſe Pace, which had been taught him by an Unſkilful Hand, and he will be apt to fall out of it into a Trot, or in a ſhort time forget it.

As for Racking.

This is a Pace moſt uſed in Hunting or riding Poſt, being between a Pace and full Gallop, by ſome termed a full Speed, yet little differs from Ambling, except in being more Swift and of a ſhorter Tread, tho' in Ambling the Ground is better ridded, yet this pace is more eaſie, and highly approved by many expert Horſe-men, who uſe particularly to teach it, tho' I find no certain Rule to it, but conclude it a Motion natural to moſt Horſes that are brought to the Amble.

As for the Gallop,

It is moſt appropriated to the Trotting Horſe, for ſailing but of his Trot, he has no other pace but the Gallop, as likewiſe a Horſe well uſed to Racking, will naturally take this Motion; but the Pace is very awkward to be brought to it, although in a while, with good Uſage and Gentleneſs, he may be brought to it; and the reaſon why this is at firſt irkſome to him, is, becauſe having been trained to a ſet Pace, when he is forced to a Motion ſomewhat of the like nature, (tho' much ſwifter) by ſtraining to ſwiften his pace, he ſcambles with his Legs; but in a Month's time underſtanding the alteration, he will be apt enough to take it with little trouble; however, beware that you Gallop him not too often, nor to Exceſs, leſt it ſpoil his pace, rendring it hard, coming ſomething near the Trot, by reaſon of Straining.

Obſerve in the cleverneſs of Galloping, that your Horſe raiſes his Feet nimblely from the Ground, but not too high, that neither he rouleth or beateth himſelf, but ſtretch-

ing forth his fore-Legs, his hinder Legs keep Time cleverly and swiftly, that he cuts not his Knee, nor crosses or strikes one Foot against another, but still leadeth with his far-Foot. If he Gallop short and round, his fore Feet well rising, denotes him Strong, but not Swift, and so consequently fitter for War than Racing. If you perceive he takes up his Legs confusedly as if he did it in pain, he will never make a good Galloper, for it denotes the Sinews to be shrank, that with little Travel, he'll often be Subject to Halting and Lameness. As for the Trot, it is natural to all Horse's; but the loftly prancing Trot is for War accounted the best, and that for Travel that rides most Ground with least pain to the Horse, he taking up his Feet cleverly and even from the Ground without Interfering.

The Running Horse, or Racer, how to Manage, Feed, Physick, bring to the Post-stall, &c.

Having spoken pretty largely as to what hitherto relates to this noble Creature in many Particulars, I shall now, for the Accomodation of Gentlemen and others, who have much desired it, give Directions. Plain, Easie, and with as little Charge as possible, how to Order and Manage a Horse for bringing him to run a Race, or more properly, to be Matched: I know that there were some who aver, it is impossible it should be done under six Months; others allow five, and none of past times under. This I look upon as a design not so much to rob a Gentleman of half a Year's Pleasure, as to put him to treable Charges, to the advantage of such who undertake to look to, and order Running-Horse's; and therefore I thought fit to Undeceive such as have been Imposed on, by plainly laying down a nearer, less Chargeable, and more easie Method, altogether as safe and Effectual. *Viz.*

If you design to Match your Horse, consider well the State of his Body, and do it not inconsiderately; and this may be observed in three Particulars.

(1.) If he be Foul or Fat, or newly taken from Grass or Soil.

(2.) Note; If he be very Poor or lean by over-Travel-ling, Infirmary or hidden Cause, you cannot at present discover.

(3.) Take notice, if he has had good Usage, moderate Exercise, and be in good Estate and Plight;

And from these observe in the first Case, to take a longer time for Keeping, Matching, and bringing him into good Order, fit for Running, which indeed if long, is the most violent of Exercise; in this case get two Months, or if you can something more.

In the second Estate of the Horse's Body, you need not take so long a time, especially in case only of Leanness, because the Grease cannot injure him, and you may exercise him with his Feeding, that is, at all seasonable times.

In the third Estate, which I consider as a Mean between the other Extreams, he may be Dicted for the Match in a Month or six Weeks. But to come nearer to my purpose, I allow two Months to be a sufficient time to prepare a Horse under any of these Estates of Body to run a Match; and these for the better leading to the end of what I purpose, may properly be divided into shorter Periods of time, viz.

The first Fortnights Ordering the Running-Horse, &c.

If the Horse be Fat or Foul, newly taken from Grass or Soil, and you have, or intend to Match him, bring him to a clean dry Stable Litter him well, and over Night give him two Quarts of *splent Beans* and as many *dry Oats*, Rub him down and Litter him well with dry clean Wheat-straw, and early in the Morning rouse him, if laid; dip his Bit in Beer and put on his Bridle, dress him and cleanse him in all Parts; if the Weather be cold, have a large strong Body-cloath of Kersey, but in warm Weather Cotton, or such light Matters will do, (for in Heats you must be very careful he take no Cold or Surfeit) fold this well about his Body place on his Saddle, bring close the foremost Girt, but the other leave so loose as to thrust a Whisp between it and the Horse's Body; let your Breast-cloath cover his Shoulders, and washing his Mouth with Beer, leave him for an Hour, then lead him forth and Rack him

him gently in even Ground a Mile or more, then Gallop moderately up some Hill, so Rack or Walk him down again, then Cool him a little, and ride him to some pleasant River or Spring, and let him Drink, which if he refuses, Exercise him again till he will do it; When he has drank, Rack him Home and put him cool into the Stable fresh Littered, having first, if possible, made him on the foul out-cast Litter void his Urine and Dung.

Being in the Stable, tie him to the Rack, and with hard Whisks let his Legs be rubbed down, and all his Parts the like, taking off his Saddle, and cloathing him warmer or lighter, as the Season requires, so Whisk him round, cleanse his Feet, and throw into the Rack a knop of Hay well dusted, to tear whilst he stands on his Bridle, which may be half an Hour; then give him a Quart of the whitest and heaviest Oats, and if he seem desirous of more, you may give him another like quantity, then leave him to his Rest till eleven a Clock; then Visit again, and rub him over gently, give him three Pints of the like Oats, and close the Stable as dark as may be; at two Hours end Visit him again with the like quantity of Oats as before, Rub him gently and remove the Excrements; give him a Bottle of Hay, and leave him for 3 Hours more, if in Summer, but if in Winter, only two and an half; then wash his Mouth and the Muzzle of his Bridle with Beer; Saddle him and bring him forth, having well rub'd him down, then endeavour to make him empty on the old Litter; Ride him forth and give him gentle Breathings by some pleasant River or Meadow, that he may take delight in it, but upon a full Stomach Gallop him not up a Hill, lest it endanger his Wind; heat him both before and after Water, and in the approach of Dark, bring him home; so by early and late Airings the foulness will be deminshed, and the gross Humours dispersed: Use him in Stabling as before, and visit him three Hours after with a like quantity of Oats; toss up his Litter and let him rest till Morning.

Things proper to be observed in Heats, &c.

Two Heats in a Week, if they be thorow ones, are sufficient for any State of Body. If the Match be made for

56 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Running on a *Tuesday*, then let the Heating days be *Tuesday* and *Saturday* in each Week, and the Greatest on the *Tuesday*; but in rainy slabby Weather, you may shift these days, and chuse those that are fair; or the hours in those days may be changed where necessity requires it: If the Weather be dull, heavy, dripping or cold, it will be convenient when abroad, to have a Hood with large Ears on our Horse, to keep out the Rain or Damp, the Nape of it thickned with a Lining, that the Wet may not easily penetrate, lest the wet falling on his Ears Neck, or Fillets, subiect him to Diseases, and hinder his Performance; carry him never to Heats before day, nor keep him out after it is dark.

Rules for the second Fortnight's Keeping.

Use him in Littering, and Dressing as before, only what Hay he has let him take it out of your Hand to be the more Familiar; when he has eaten his portion of Oats, Bridle him, Ride out, Air and Water him, as in the foregoing Fortnight; and when you return, you may give him near three pints of Oats; let him take Hay out of your Hand, Litter him well, and so leave him and order him as before: Then observe to make him a Diet-Bread in the following manner.

Grind three Pecks of Beans with one of Wheat, dress them through an indifferent fine Rag to a fine Flower, then put Ale Yest and fair Water to make the Dough; Knead it exceeding firm, then let it lye till it rise and become Light, then Knead it again and make it into six penny Loaves, let them soak well in an Oven, and being hot, turn the Bottoms uppermost and let them cool, and three days after Baking, use them in the following order.

Cut the Bread into thin slivers, and lay it a while to dry, crumble it small among the Oats, and give it the Horse, not exceeding a pound to half a peck of Oats; This do first in the Morning, and about Eleven repeat it again, then let him rest two Hours, and feed him then the like again, and so at distant spaces, as his Appetite best serves him, keeping every thing clean about him; Let his Heats Airings and Waterings be the same, unless in foul Weather,

as I have said; but when he is led to his Heats, give him Oats only, and when he is returned and Fed, put on his Muzzle washed in Beer. This use of the Muzzle is to prevent the Horse from feeding on his Litter, biting or gnawing the Rack-staves or Mainger, licking Loam, and many other Inconveniencies: They may be made of Leather, Pack-thread, or double Canvas, tho' the latter with Lattice is preferable, the Leather being the worse, by reason of its Scent, yet these must be kept clean, lest offensive smells nauceate and sicken the Horse's Stomach.

For the rest of this Fortnight, observe he be duly Cloathed, and Dieted as is requisite according to the Season; then put a new-laid Egg whole into half a pint of new Ale, and oblige him to swallow it, so lead him forth, and cause him to Empty, by smelling to the Litter or old Dung, which will oblige him to it; then Rack him gently for a Mile or two, so by degrees mend his pace till he come to full Speed, and bring him to the Starting-post, if any such be appointed, or if none, than to some other Post near the place where the Race is to be performed; then alight, take off the Body and Breast-cloth, place on the Saddle, Mount him, let him smell to, and grow Familiar with the Post, as likewise to the wagling-post, and so run him three quarters Speed, from the beginning of the designed Race, to the end, if you find he will endure it without pain or loss of Wind; but if it be Irsom to him, then slacken your pace, and by degrees he will come to it with Delight; and particularly remark on what Ground he most naturally affects to run, whether Soft, Hard, Smooth, Hilly, Dank or Dry, and make it to your advantage in the Race.

This done, bring him under some Hay or Corn Rick, Hedge, Pit, or dry Ditch, and there scrape off the Sweat with your Glazing-knife, and rub his Ears, Head and Crest, clap on his Cloaths and the Saddle on them, and ride him gently so that he may cool before you bring him to the Stable, but keep such a pace that he may not cool too fast, or all on a sudden: Having Stabled him, tye his Head to the Rack, and having the following Scowring in readiness, give it him as shall be directed.

58 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

First Scowring.

Take an Ounce and fix Grains of the transparentest *Roach-Allom*, a pint of *Malaga*, in which dissolve the *Allom*; to these put three ounces of *Olive Oil* very sweet, mix them well together with an ounce and an half of brown Sugar-candy in Powder, these set on a gentle Fire till pretty hot, and upon the Horse's return from the first thorough Heat, give it him in a Drenching-horn, and it will infallibly bring away the Molton Grease and bad Humours, or other Obstructions that remain in the Body, and wou'd make him unfit for this Exercise.

Directions to Order him after the taking this.

When you have given the Horse this Scowring, rub him well all over with Whisps and a Curry-comb; follow these with a Brush, and dust him well, then rub him with a dry Cloath till no Sweat appears; put his Cloath on again, and truss under the Cloath warm Wisps, let him fast for the space of two Hours, and keep him in continual motion that he sleep not, that the Humours may disperse and evacuate, then give him a handful of Wheat-ears: If upon handling him under the Ears and near the Heart, you perceive no more Sweat arises, but if he be faint or sickish, after the expiration of the time, toss up his Litter, take off his Bridle, and let him rest for the space of two Hours, and he will be well again, then give him Wheat-ears gradually, and rub him down; after that, let him feed on Hay out of your Hand, and an hour after crum three shivers of the Bread mentioned, with a quart of Oats and a pint of split Beans; let him rest after this three Hours; that expired, Visit him again, and before you Dress him, give him a like quantity of Oats, Beans and Bread, then Ride him, his Cloathing being on, a little way, but suffer him not to Water till about an hour and an half after; then wash a pint of Oats in Beer and give them to Cool him, and in so ordering leave him till Morning with a little Hay, and continue after, his usual Feedings and gentle breathings.

Thus having ordered him, observe the other three Heating days, to improve his Speed, and give him the aforesaid Scowring, and he will be very Pleasant and Lightsom.

The third Fortnight, how to Order him.

Having thus far proceeded, mingle half a Bushel of the best Wheat, and a like quantity of Beans, grind them very small, so that the Flower be finer than the former, and make it up into Loaves the same way, and it being Baked, after three days cut the Crust away, slice it out and crumble it as before with Oats and Beans the same quantity, and let the feeding be as in the foregoing Fortnight, and his Heats must be more moderate, lest you overstrain him: omit likewise the Scowring, not giving any more after his Heats, lest being empty of Humors, his Body open, cold and watry Humours enter at his Vents and Pores; but when at any time he is moderately heated, bring him home and cool him by gentle Racking before he comes to the Stable, giving him Cordial Balls according to the following Receipt.

Cordial Balls for the third Fortnight.

Take Carthumus Seeds, Anni-seeds, Fennel-seed, Escar-pain Roots and Colts-foot Leaves, each two Ounces, dry them well, that when bruised, they may become a Powder, sift it thorough a Lawn Sieve, add two Ounces of the flower of Brimstone, an Ounce of Licorice Juice, put these into a pint of White-wine, Chymical Oil of Aniseeds, Sugar in Syrup, and Sallad-Oil, each half a pint, and being well mingled, mix them with so much Wheat-flower as they may reduce it to a Paste; make it up into Balls as big as French Wall nuts, or pullets-Eggs; these encrease his Wind, expel Cold, purge away Molten Grease, and produce good sound Flesh; he may take one of these in the Morning, and another at Night, whole, or dissolved in a pint of warm Ale.

Rules for the fourth and last Fortnight.

This requires more Caution than any of the precedent, let his Bread therefore be finer than any hitherto, three

60 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

pecks of Wheat to a peck of Beans, and Boulted as fine as may be; make it up with the Whites of twenty Eggs, and New-milk instead of Water; let the Oats you give him with it be well Winowed and Sifted, and the split Beans clear from Husks, tho the quantity you give him may not differ from what has been Directed. In the first Week keep the Heating days as before, but in the next, which is the last, bate one of them, so that he may for five days be at ease, to recover his Spirits and Strength, yet you may give him considerable Airings to keep his Wind in good Length, however, give him no Scowring, but the better to expel the Fumes or Vapours, burn *Albanum Storax*, or *Frankinsence*, in the Stable, when close shut, on a Chafing-dish of Charcoal; sometimes sprinkle a little *Muscadine* on his Meat, at least twice a day, and give him once a day half a pint of that Wine, with the whites of two or three Eggs beaten in it, omitting the Hay, unless a small quantity after his Heating.

The Muzzle may be laid aside the last Week, unless the three days before he Runs, except he be a foul Feeder, and prove to eat his Litter, &c. Let him be well fed before and after Airings.

The day before the Wager is to be run, Water as formerly, yet a fourth part of his Meat must be withheld, and in your Evening Airing bring him home sooner than usual, even before Sun-set, and this day let him be well Shoo'd, and every thing that is necessary done to him, that nothing may be new to him, or trouble him the day he is to Run.

On the Morning the Match is to be run, come early to him, take off his Muzzle and rub him well, especially his Head, Ears, Neck and Withers; make him a Mash with *Muscadine*, Bran, Oats and Bread, made as directed; if he refuses this, give him dried Oats, and after them a pint of *Muscadine*, with three new-laid Eggs in it, then wash his Muzzle with the same Wine, lead him out, and endeavour all you can to make him Empty; lead him among Creaks, Stubble, or the like, let him smell to old Dung, &c. which will provoke him to it, which emptying is a great advantage in Running: You must bring him covered, his Saddle

Saddle and Girths lightly on him, that he may not feel any weight; wash his Mouth if he Foam; and gently cherish him with your Hand and Voice, &c.

Note, If you are to Ride with a Person, who, by reason of his being Lighter than your self, or who gives you any advantage, that there must be Way-bits in the case, be sure to order them, that you are not deceived in the Management; so make your Agreement if you can, That he who Rides against you, carries not the Weights in his Saddle, for then they are in a manner as if he carry'd none, and the Disadvantage, is yours, for they neither disadvantage the Horse nor Rider, unless great Odds be given in the weight of the Riders, which seldom happens; but if he carry them about him, then is the Advantage much to your purpose, for they will both hinder the Horse and his Management.

As for the Ground, you must (as I hinted) observe which your Horse takes best when you give him his Heats and Airings, and in the Race chuse the most agreeable, as well as the Place and Opportunity will give you leave, but throw not your self out in being too curious in this matter, if it be not easily gam'd from those that Ride with you, for by such Niceties many have lost topping Matches.

Stars, Snips and Blazes for Beautifying a Horse, how to make them.

To make a white Star, Snip or Blaze, in a White or Sorrel Horse, cut a piece of Led flatted and smoothed proportionable to your Fancy, then the Hair being shaved off in the place intended, open the Skin with a Lancet, so hollow, that you may thrust the Led in when dipped in Spike Oil, close it up and anoint it with Oil of *Mallards* and *Cammomil*, laying over it a Plaister of Bees-wax; when it has been there four days, take the Led out, clap the skin close, and Anoint it as before, and when the Hair (which it will soon do) grows again, it will be Milk-white.

Red Stars on a White Horse are done in the like manner, in forming your Led, shaving and opening the Skin; but you must use to cause the Colour, Oil of *Cassia*, *Soot* and

Vermilion,

62 *The Gentleman's Compliment Jockey.*

Vermilion, finely temper'd together, and the Lead anointed with it : Take out the Lead at the same days as the former, and anoint the sore place with Ointment of *Tobacco* and *Marsh-Mallows*.

A black Star in a white Horse, make as the White, only the Ingredients must be *Soulters Ink*, or *Lamb-black*, and Oil of *Tartar*; and in this manner you may make Feathers or Marks on any part of the Body for Beauty and Ornament, tho too frequently used by some, who do it by way of Disguise, that a Horse ill come by, may not be Discover'd. And thus one Star, Snip or Blaze may be taken out, and one of a different Colour put in.

Things to be observ'd when you put your Horse to Grass.

Having spoken many times about dry feeding, it will not be amiss for the Horse-man to know how he should be Order'd at Grass for his Health sake, and to keep a comely proportion of Body, for in the knowledge of this there's much Advantage.

When he has stood in the House and you intend him for Grass, abate or change his Cloaths, putting him on daily thinner, that by degrees he may be weaned from them, and, in the end, wearing none, take no notice of it, or be prejudic'd with Cold, or blasts of Wind abroad.

This done, let him Blood twice or thrice, there being a day or two's respite between; give him heartning Meats; by degrees lessen his Allowance; and in the end let him for two or three days before you send him out, feed on Hay alone, and put not any valuable or tender Horse into wet Pastures, where Fogs, Damps, and unwholsom Airs arise, from Fens, Marshes, Ditches, Rivers, Bogs, or the like. However, the better to fortifie him against Sicknes or Lameness, give him the following Drink very warm three Mornings and Evenings.

The Drink to be given before Grass.

Take Bay-berries, Myrrh, Gentian, *Aristolochia*, and the shavings of Ivory, each an Ounce, bruise them when dried, so that they may be reduc'd to Powder; give him half an Ounce

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 63

Ounce at a time in *Muscadine*, *Mulago*, or for want of it, sweet *Wort*, a quart of either pretty warm.

Thus having fitted him for the Field, put him out in a warm dry day, that the cold weather may seize on him by degrees, so that shutting the Pores, he may be harden'd against it with little damage to himself.

How the Horse is to be used when taken from Grass.

Observe in taking him up you do it in a dry day, the Horse by the Heat and Air freed from damps or wet; and this is best done about *Barrholomew-Tide* at farthest, unless the Weather be exceeding clear and warm, and then he may run to the first of *September*, but not conveniently longer; and for a Week or two after taken up, give him no immoderate Heats, nor over-Travel him, lest you melt his Grease, for the Fat gotten at Grass is exceeding tender, and apt to be dissolv'd by any violent Motion, whereby if the Blood happen to be Inflamed, it will endanger his falling into mortal Sicknes: A day after he is Stabled, bring him forth into the Air, and bleed him well; cleanse his Feet, and Shoe him well, and give him the Drink in proportion before prescrib'd for going to Grass.

Other material Directions.

Three days after your Horse is taken from Grass, if the Weather be fair, ride him abroad, and after a gentle Heat, bring him home, smooth down his Hairs and sleek them with Soap rubbed in the Palms of your Hands, but let not any Soap get into his Eyes, Nostrils, or Mouth, cleanse him then with some warm Water and a linnen Cloath; after that dry him well with a wollen Cloath till no wet remain about him: And being thus cleansed from Dust and Filth, cover him as warm as is usual in cold weather, and this will make him Slick and Lively, and seem not to be the same Horse, for his colour will be somewhat alter'd.

Blood-letting, on what occasions it ought to be us'd.

Opening the Temple-Veins is proper to ease pains in the Head, if caused by cold Rheums, Fevers, Drowiness, Clavens,

64 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Clavers, Distempers in the Eyes, and other Maladies proceeding from affections of the Brain, or any Swellings or Inflammations about the Head, or Throat; and for these you may give him some of the Blood to drink mixed with *Bay-Salt*. Opening the weeping Veins under the Ears is very proper to prevent Blindness, and cure Distempers in the Eyes: Opening the Pallate Veins prevents or cures the *Lampas, Slavers, Anticor, Yellows, Drowsiness, Surfeit, Tiring, &c.* The Vein in the side of the Neck is proper to disburthen the Body of gross blood, ease the Heart of *Oppressions, Anticor, Faintings*, and the like: Opening the Breast-Vein is proper for *Moor-foundring*, occasion'd by molten Grease, contracted in the body by hard Riding, preventing Diseases in the Liver, Lungs, and other internal Parts, and is convenient to be done in any Sprain or Hurt in the Shoulder, to prevent Lameness.

Opening the Thigh Veins prevents foundring in the Fore-feet, Screwzing-bone, Mallender, or the like excruciential Infirmities. To bleed on the four Shackle-Veins before, is good against the Crown-scab, Quitter-bone, &c. To open the Spur-veins is good against Moor-foundring, Farcine in the Side, Swelling under the belly, or the like. The Toe Veins being open'd, help fretting-foundering, Hoof-bound, or any grief occasion'd by the beating the Horse's Hoof upon any hard stony way.

The bleeding the two Thigh Veins behind, ease grief in the Kidneys, swelling in the hinder Legs, Swellings, Scratches, Pissing blood, Foundring, &c. To open the Shoulder Veins behind, prevents pain in the Feet, Foundering, Uneasiness, &c. Open the Flank Veins in case of a Fever, swelling of the Stones, Poorness, or the Tilt-Worm.

The Tail Vein open'd, prevents the Mange, Scab, Itch, and falling off of the Hair. And these blood-lettings prepare a Horse or Mare the better for Physick, and greatly enliven him.

What Season is best to let Blood in.

If present danger require letting blood you may waive Critical times, and do it immediately, otherwise observe the following days, *viz.*

The

The Third and Fifteenth of *January*. The Fourth and Ninth of *February*. The Sixth and Tenth of *March*. The Fifteenth and Twentieth of *April*. The First and Thirtieth of *May*. The Fifteenth and Nineteenth of *June*. In *July* and *August*, forbear letting of blood, unless on some urgent occasion. In *September*, bleed the Eleventh and Twenty eighth. *October*, the Eighth, and Twenty third. *November*, the Fifth and Sixteenth. And in *December*, the Fourteenth, Sixteenth and Twenty sixth. These days by the most Skilful, are held to be safer and better than others in sundry regards, but especially in that of the Signs, who then Govern.

Viz. *Aries*, the Head; *Taurus*, the Neck; *Gemini*, the Shoulders; *Cancer*, the Stomach; *Leo*, the Heart; *Virgo*, the Guts and belly; *Libri*, the Reins and Buttocks; *Scorpio*, the privy Members; *Sagittarius*, the Thighs; *Capricorn*, the Knees, *Aquarius*, the Legs, and *Pisces*, the Feet. From which, Note, that it is not at any time safe to let Blood in that part at the time the Sign is predominant or governing in it.

Observations on a Horse, as to the Brain, Sinews, Veins, relating to Health, Strength, &c.

He that will be expert in Ordering a Horse, must not be unskilful in knowing the parts from whence Defects and Diseases chiefly arise; the most material I shall briefly Enumerate.

First. Consider the Seat of Life to be in the Brain, Heart and Liver, from whence it contributes to, and disposes every Member, and for that cause, those are called the Three principal Members; to which, some would add a Fourth, *viz.* The Stones: But that Addition by the wisest Practitioners has been rejected, because if taken away, Life still remains, which it is impossible to do if any of the other be removed.

Secondly. The Sinews, which are these, *viz.* Two white Sinews or Tendons, beginning at the Nose, and passing through the Neck and Back, branch into the fore-Legs, and end in the hinder Legs, taking their Ligaments in all the four

66 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

four Feet. Two Sinews called the main Sinews, which descend from the Brain, and passing down the Cheeks, fasten the Jaws. Three from the Shoulder to the first Joint of the Arms or fore-legs, besides two other great Sinews. Four great Sinews from the Knees to the Pasterns, with the same number in the hinder part above. As well within as without the fore-part of the Breast, are ten Sinews small and great. From the Reins of the Back to the Stones, are four great Sinews or Ligaments, and another great Sinew running to the end of the Tail. To conclude, a Horse has great and small, Twenty Nine; or, as some will have it, Thirty.

Thirdly. The Veins through which the Blood Circulates the whole Body, are many; yet seeing they centre in the Liver, the Seat and Fountain of Blood, distributing it into every part; divers are of opinion, that all other Veins in the Horse's Body, are but branches of the *Median Vein*, proceeding directly from the Liver, and when ever that is afflicted with Wind, has the Blood corrupted in it, or is subject to any other Infirmary, it afflicts all at once, the whole Body of the Horse.

Those Branches that ascend to the Head and upper parts of the Body, are called *Ascendants*; and those that run down into the Legs and other parts of the Body, *Descendants*: And through these branches, sleeping and waking, the Blood continues its Course, Ebbing and flowing like the Ocean, by the course of the Moon.

The things herein chiefly to be consider'd, are the Branches properly to be open'd, as I have directed in Blood-letting, Page 64.

The Bones that frame a Horse's Body, their Number, and how they are Placed.

In the Body of a Horse, the Bones, not accounting the Teeth, which are visible, thus are Numbred, *viz.*

His Head-bones, comprehending the Crooks and handle of Skull, are (although they are compiled of parts and parcels of other Bones) likewise two flat handles, which form the Pallate and Fork, or Throat, have Five, His Breast-bone and

and his Chine, Fifty two other Bones. His Ribs, long and short, are Thirty six. His fore-Legs and fore-Feet, contain Forty four. The hinder Legs and Feet, Forty. So that the whole Structure of the Body of a Horse, comprizing his Teeth, consists of 177 Bones.

Of the Four Humours in the Body of a Horse, &c.

As Fire, Air, Water and Earth produce and give Life and Nutriment to all Living Creatures, so the Humours, viz. Choler, Blood, Phlegm, and Melancholly, are the principal Agitators in the Bodies of all Creatures, and, as it were, Compose, or at least Preserve them: Choler, by reason of its heat being alluded to Fire: Phlegm, by reason of its Moisture and Coldness, to Water: Blood, by reason of its heat and Moisture, to Air: And Melancholly, through its cold and dryness, to Earth.

Choler has its Seat near the Liver, which by reason of its heat and dryness accords with the Blood which has its Fountain in the Liver, and from thence disperseth it self through the Body.

Phlegm has its chief Seat about the Brain, which is a principal Seat of Life, and frequently afflicts when out of temper, with Rheums, Colds, Coughs, Catarrhs, &c.

Melancholly has its Seat about the Spleen, being the gross and earthly part of the Blood and Choler. As for the Offices and Dispositions of these Humours, they are four;

Choler causeth Concoction and voiding of Excrements; Blood nourisheth the Body; Phlegm gives Motion to the Joynts; and Melancholly disposeth to Appetite, Creating a good Stomach.

The Humours or Constitution of a Horses Body to be taken from the Colour, &c.

The Humours are to be known, that a Farrier or any skillful Horse-Doctor may the better prepare the Medicine which I am hereafter to prescribe; and this may be done divers ways, and particularly by the Colour of a Horse, Sympathizing with the Humours; viz.

If

68 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

If a Horse be Cole-black, and has nothing of changeable about him, then Choler is predominant in him; and by reason of the great heat in him, he is incident to Inflammations of the Liver, Yellows, and Pestilential Fevers; and in that case he must have suitable Medicines to allay Heat and purge out the superfluities of Choler; yet these Medicines must not be of a quality too much operating, lest they impair his Strength; for the cholerick Horse, though he be fierce and fiery, has nevertheless no great Strength.

If your Horse be Dark or bright Bay, neither scouling Countenance, bad Mouthed, white Flanked, white Fleabitten white Lyard like, Silver or black with a white Star, white Rash, with a black Foot; then he is Sanguine, and the Diseases to which he is most subject, are the Consumption of the Liver, Glanders, Leprosie, and such other Distempers caused by Infection. Those of this Complexion are very strong and will endure strong Medicine without impairing strength. If these Medicines are not compounded of extraordinary hot Ingredients to over-heat the Blood.

If your Horse be perfect White, Yellow, Dun, Kite colour, Mous-dun, or the like in mixture, then is the prevailing Humour in him *Pblegm*; and such are slow of Nature subject to lose his Flesh, also to cold Rheums, Head-Ach, Coughs, Staggers, and many other Distempers proceeding from cold watry Distillations; and therefore he must have hot Medicines, *viz.* Simples of a hot and strong working nature, that may effectually operate on the Mass of *Pblegm*.

If a dark Bay colour, having long White Hairs, called Goats-hairs, on his Legs, Russet, Chestnut, Ash-coloured, or Gray; Then *Melancholy* is predominant, and his Distempers are Inflammations of the Spleen, Frenzies, and other the like dull and Melancholy Distempers, and Require cold and moist Medicines; for those of a hot or drying quality are very hurtfull.

These Horses are very strong, though they appear not so; and consequently, are fit for servile Labours; and when you find a Horse mixed with many, or all of these Colours, then he, little or more, (as the Colours are more or less on him of one or the other kind) participates of the

Humours

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 69

Humours; and Medicines must be temper'd accordingly; as also to the Nature of the Sickness, if it has continu'd long, and he is enfeebled thereby, then you must not give him over strong Potions: but more of Medicines hereafter.

How to prepare a Horse to receive Medicines, if any Distemper has seiz'd him.

Observe twenty four hours before you intend to administer the Medicine, (whether Powder, Pills, or Drench, composed of Simples, &c.) that you restrain him from eating Hay or Straw, or any hard Meats that admit not of easie Digesture, thereby to hinder the Operation of the Physick; and for twelve hours before keep him fasting, for the emptiness of Stomach gives a free Operation to any Purge, when Fulness hinders greatly the working of any Medicine, much obstructing it, and thereby frequently injuring the Horse, by turning the force of it on the Vitals.

The safest Meat to prepare him, is, either Rye, or Wheaten Bran, mix'd with white Split Beans, Wheat flower mix'd with white Oats, and his Drink, warm Water; into which put a little fine Bran.

What Purgations, with the least Danger, may be given to a Horse.

The most Effectual and gentlest Purgations are Pills; but it must be consider'd, as is said, according to the state of the Horse's Body; And, for Example, to make the gentlest Pill against Pestilential or Infectious Diseases.

Peel twenty Cloves of Garlick, bruise and well temper them with a pound of fresh Butter, Roll them up in balls as big as Walnuts, give four or five of them, one soon after another; and if the Contagion have not seiz'd the Heart, Brain, or Liver, it will work it out.

Approved Rules to be observ'd by such as either Travel or Exercise Horses; for want of the due Observation whereof, many excellent Horses have been lost; though hereby they may be kept from Sickness.

First, when your Horse is lusty, pleasant and clear in body, then he is fit for Labour or any Exercise: but if he

be

70 The Gentlemans Compliment Jockey.

be sad, heavy, or dejected in Countenance, do not Labour him until you have found the Cause, and removed it. Secondly, let not your Horse eat any thing for two or three hours before you travel him, and then not much until you come to your Lodging; for baiting at Noon is naught and hurtful, except you rest four or five hours, so as that he may not travel upon a full Stomach, and let his Bit be small, and be sure he never wear a rusty Bit or Snaffle, for fear of the Canker. Thirdly, let your Travel be moderate, except necessity (which cannot be limited) enforce it; then be sure not to let your Horse either eat or drink until he be very cold; and if it be in Winter-time, be sure to cloath his Head and Breast very warm after your Travel; and every Morning either squirt a little Vinegar into his Nostrils, or else rub them with Oyl of Bay, with a Cloath noited therewith fastned to the end of a Stick, and thrust up and down him Nostrils to purge his Head. Fourthly, neither wash nor Water your Horse (especially in the Winter-time) for when he is very hot, to walk him in the cold Air is dangerous, and washing is a speedy Preparative to bring him to some dangerous Disease; for there is no desperate Disease incident to a Horse, but the same proceeds from the Causes of too much Heat or Cold; and none more dangerous then this. Fifthly, when you travel, alight often from your Horse (if Cause of Necessity enforce not the contrary) and lead him to some place of Grass, Straw, or Brakes, and there stay a while until your Horse Piss, which he will hardly do except it be in such places, because the sprinkling of his Water will scald his Legs. Sixthly, if your Horse be very hot, let him not drink cold Water, but rather at some House give him a quart of good Beer, or a pint of Wine; and if you do Water him by the way, let him not drink until he have washed his Mouth, which is done when he thrusteth his Head into the Water, presently pull up his Head which will cleanse his Mouth; and if you are forced to let him drink, ride him so that he may be sure to keep the same Heat he was in before. Seventhly, After his Labour, if you can have a convenient place, let

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 71

him wallow himself, for it is no less delightful then comfortable to his Body. Eightly, If he happen to fall sick in your Travel (which proceeds commonly either from eating or drinking too much at a time, or otherwise) give him a pint of *Sack* or *Malmsey*, a quarter of a pint of *Aqua-Vita*, with six penny worth of the best Treacle, and a quarter of a pint of the best *Olive-Oil*, brew them well together, and give him a draught, and then take a new laid Egg, and pull out his Tongue, bruise the Shell, and thrust it into his Throat, and then let go his Tongue; do this twice, then let him blood in the Pallet of his Mouth, and rub it well with Salt, and afterwards order him as he should be in the Stable.

Another Excellent way, to the like purpose.

If you cannot get Sack-Wine, or Treacle, give him a pint of *Aqua-Vita*, or any other comfortable Water, with two Eggs, in the form aforesaid, to comfort his Heart. First, at night give him a good comfortable Mash, if he will eat it, and clean sweet Provender, such as he will eat; rub his Legs with Butter and Beer, cleanse his Feet, and stop them with *Caw-dung*, and after he is sufficiently fed, give him plenty of Sweet Litter, shut him dark in the Stable, and early in the Morning let him be thoroughly dressed and rubbed, and before you ride, two hours, let him eat half a Peck of old sweet *Oats*, with a pint of the strongest Beer, Malmsey, or White-Wine for his Breakfast. Secondly, If your Horse be young, that you do travel upon (which is the Overthrow of all fine mettled Horses) when you come home, and may let him rest, then let him take his Ease and bleed; and if you find his Blood hot and dark coloured, spare not to let him bleed until there be perfect Blood; after three or four days keep him with good Mash, and give him the purging Drink before mentioned, with a pint of White-Wine, an ounce of it dissolved into powder, half an ounce of *Agarick*, a Spoonful of the Powder of *Liquorice*, made blood-temper, and well brewed together, and let him not drink Water for four or five days after, and in his Provender

72 The Gentlemans Compleat Jockey.

der put the Powder of *Brimstone*, *Enula Campana*, and *Pipodium* of the Oak, well mingled together, a Spoonful at a time, two or three hours before his Watering, and he will remain a healthful and sound Horse, if he be thus used till he be eight years old; for then the chief danger is past.

The Order of Curing Horses that are Diseas'd The Causes, the Signs, and the Cure thereof.

Of the Ague or Fever in Horses.

THE Learned do hold Three genital Kinds: First When the Vital Spirits are inflamed, wherein he is predominant more than Nature requireth. Secondly When the Humours are distemper'd by heat. Thirdly When the firm parts of the body are continually hot, that the *Ague* cometh by the excessive heating of the Horse, and thereupon a sudden Cold, or by fullness of bad Humours, which principally grow from foul, full, and ravenous feeding, and too much rest; and for that reason it taketh the Horse either hot or cold, and to keep due hours to make him shake and tremble as a Man; also we may know how the same appeareth from the Inflammations of the Stomach which scaldeth and maketh the Tongue raw; there are other causes, *viz.* by spare feeding, not clean feeding, and dry feeding, and for want of moderate labour. The Cure shall be when you perceive his dejected Countenance, and that he beginneth to tremble, enforce him into a Heat, and give him this purging Drink: Take a quart of *White-Wine* put therein an Ounce of *Aloes* small beaten: Of *Agarick* half an Ounce, of *Liquorice* and *Annisecds* half a Dram, and some *Honey* warmed a little on the Fire; and ride him until he be hot, and let him sweat moderately in the Stable, and take a special care of him; wash his Tongue with *Allum water*, *Vinegar* and *Sage*, and give him

Straw to eat, and a Gallon of old sweet Oats; at Night give him a good Mash, and the next Night after let him bleed a quart; and if his Blood be very thick, dark, yellow, let him bleed two Quarts, and afterwards keep him warm from the Air for three or four days, and give him warm Water to drink, and a little Sallet-Oyl in it, if he will drink it.

Another of the same.

Let him bleed, take of Garmander Four ounces, of Gum-Dragonet, and of dead Roses, of each an ounce: Of Oyle Olive Four Ounces; put them into a quart of strong Ale, and give it warm to the Horse to drink, then ride him until he sweat, and clath him, and keep him warm as aforesaid.

Of the Ague in the Head.

The cause of this Disease, proceeds either from cold, or taking of too much heat, or of a raw imperfect Digestion of the Stomach, which proceeds principally also from full and foul feeding; for betwixt the Stomach and the Brain is such Affinity, as that they do equally communicate their Damages: The Signs are these; The hanging down of his Head, his Eyes will swell and run with Water, and he will forsake his Meat. The Cure is, to let him bleed in the Pallet of his Mouth, and rub it with Salt to make it bleed well; then take a Stick with a Linnen-cloth fastened to the end of it, well anointed with the Oyl of Bay, thrust it up and down his Nostrills, thereby to open and purge his Head: Also perfume him with the smoak of Garlick-stalks broken into small pieces: Also air him with the smoak of Frankincense, holding the same in a Chafingdish under his Nostrills, with a great Cloath cast over his Head, and let be done Morning and Evening: Keep him with spare yet and moderate Exercise, the which will cleanse his Stomack, and make it empty, then his brain will not be troubled. Afterwards let him bleed, and give him good Mashes to drink for two days, and no cold water; as I will write down the Causes of some Diseases that are most known to the people; so for those that they are so well acquainted with, I shall only set down the Cures.

Of the sudden Sicknes of a Horse.

The cause is, for that the Heart, which is the Charriot of Life, wherein the Soul of the Horie liveth, wanting the use of the Veins and Arteries, to carry the vital Spirit of heat to all the parts of the body, to give the Horie feeling and ability to operation, by reason of some obstructions of Humours and Cold, which, for want of Heat, cannot be dissolved, for that the nature of Cold is to bind and conglutinate together, and keep them from their natural Course, proceeding from some violent Exercise, and immoderate Feeding and Rest. The sign is, the sudden dejection of his Countenance. The Cure is, to let him bleed on both sides of the breast, next the heart, whereby the Veins and Arteries being evacuated and emptied, they may begin to do that office wherunto Nature hath appointed them: Let him bleed the quantity of two quarts, then give him a comfortable drink, to stir up the vital Spirits to actions, *viz.* Take a quart of the best Sack, and burn it with *Grains, Cloves* and *Cinnamon*, and a quarter of a pound of the best *Suger*, and burn it altogether with half a pint of *Sallet-Oyl*, and Four pennyworth of the best *Treacle*, then ride him very gently till he begin to sweat, and so turn him into the Stable, and let him stand for Meats, but beware you do for him there, according to your direction, and be sure you cloath him not too warm for the Drink will thoroughly warm him, and make him sweat; let his drink be warm water, wherein boyl *Mallows* and a handful of *Water-Cresses*, of *Fennel* and *Parsly-seed*, of each an Ounce, and twice in a Morning or Evening, when he is most fasting, ride him gently a mile or two.

Of a Horse that cannot Piss.

Take a Pint of white *Vinegar*, half a pound of *Gingreen* bruise it small, and wring out the Juice, take a handful of *Fennel*, a handful of *Fox-Gloves*, the Leaves or the Flowers, two ounces of *Grommel-seed*, and half a pint of sweet *Hony*, stamp them well together, and strain them into *Vinegar*, let him stand without Meat and Drink Twenty four hours,

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 75

Of the Pains in the Head.

Take a Pint of *Malmsey*, Five new laid Eggs, a head of bruised *Garlick*, small *Pepper*, *Cinnamon*, and *Nutmegs* beaten fine, give it him to drink three days together, and let him fast five hours after.

To bring Hair again.

To bring Hair again, take the Dung of *Goats*, some *Honey* and *Allum*, and the blood of a *Hog*, boyl them together, and being hot, rub the place therewith.

Of the Stone and Cholick in a Horse.

Take a Pint of *White Wine*, half a Pint of *Burr-seed*, and beat them small, two ounces of *Pursley-seed*, half a handful of *Hop*, half a handful of new-set *Leeks*, and half a handful of *Water-Cresses*, half an ounce of *Black Soap*, and mingle them together, stamp and strain them, but put the *Burr-seed* and *Parsley-seed* to it after it is strained, and then warm it, and give it him to drink.

Of killing the Fire, either in Burning or Shot.

Take *Varnish*, or *Oyl* and *Water* beaten together, and moisten the place with a Feather.

Of a Horse that stumbleth, which is called the Cords.

This is called the Cords: The Cord is a Sinew that breedeth amongst the Sinews, the one end cometh down to the shankle Vein, and so up thorough the Leg, goeth over the inner side of the Knee, and so over the Shoulder, and so along the Neck by the Wefant, and it goeth over the Temples under his Eye, down over the Snout, betwixt both the Nostrils, and the Gristle, there knit the length of an *Almond*; take a sharp knife and cut a slit even at the Top of his Nose, just with the point of the Gristle; open the slit, and you shall perceive a white string, take it up with a Boars Tooth, or a Bucks Horn, that is crooked, or some crooked Bodkin, and twine it about the slit, and cut it asunder; you may twine it so much as

76 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

that you may rear his foot from the ground, and then stitch up the slit, and anoint it with Butter, and the Horse doubtless will be cured.

Of the Canker.

The Cure is, let him bleed abundantly in the Veins that be next to the Sore, then take of *Allum* one pound, of white *Copras* a quartern, and a good handful of *Salt*, boyl them together in fair running water, from a pottle to a quart; this water being warm, put part thereof into a dish, and with a Clout wash the same till it begin for to bleed; and let it dry; then take of *Black-Soap* one pound, and of *Quick-silver* half an ounce, and incorporate them, till that the *Quick-silver* be not seen, and always after you have washed the same with a slice, cover the Ulcer with this Medicine till it be whole, but be sure still to let the blood be about the Ulcer for many days together, and when it is killed, then cast upon it the powder of unslack'd *Lime*, or of *Brimstone*.

Of the Farcin.

This Ulcer is not unknown to any that have enjoyed Horses, and yet unknown almost to all; I mean the true cause of this Disease, and the Cure; some say it is a corruption of Blood, some an outward hurt, as of *Spur-galling*, biting of *Ticks*, *Hogs-Lice*, or such like; some say an infirmity bred in the Breast near the Heart, and in the side Vessels and Cod near the Stones, many evil humours congealed together, which afterwards disperse themselves into the Thighs, and sometimes into the Head, and do send forth watry humours into the Nostrils, and then it is called the running *Farcin*. Indeed if the true Cause of a Disease be known, the Disease it self is easily cured. The *Mange*, the *Leprosie*, and this Disease of the *Farcin*, are most pernicious to a Horse, for oftentimes it falleth out, that many Horses infected therewith, though they live, and the Disease seemeth to be healed, yet are they rendred of small or no use. For my own part I conjecture the cause of this Disease grows either from abundance of bad Blood, or by a great Distemper of the Blood, through a violent heat, changed into a sudden cold. To cure this Distemper, first

let him blood on both sides of the Neck, three quarts at least, for it is most certain that the Loyns which is then the Fountain of Blood, is corrupted, and so sendeth the Fume into every part of the Body, as to become loathsome to behold : Then give him this drink ; Take a Gallon of fair water, put into it a good handful of *Rue*, a good spoonful of *Hemp-seed*, and a handful of the inner Rinde of green *Elder*, bruise them in a Morter together, and seeth it till it be half consumed, and being cold, give it him to drink : Evermore continue to let him blood in that Vein which is nearest to the sore place, a great quantity, as you see occasion ; let his Diet be thin, but very clean and sweet ; then take this approved Medicine following ; which though the Disease be never so foul, it will undoubtedly cure it. Take of *Herb-grace* a handful, *Fetherfew* a handful, of *Chick-weed* of the House, a handful, of *Kisswood*, a handful, of *Heart-Robert*, a handful, keep the residue thereof in a Pipkin close cover'd in the earth, stop the mouth thereof close with *Herb-grace* and *Dock-leaves*, and a green Turf laid upon it, no air to come in, and every third day untye his Ears and dress it, and so continue it till all the *Facine* be dead ; for undoubtedly at three or four dressings it will kill it ; wash all the Herbs so clean that no durt nor filth be on them : Boyl Chamberlye and Bay-Salt, with a little *Copperas* and *Strong-Nettles* to wash the Sores if need be ; but beware of burning them either with Fire or other Corrosives, for although it may kill the Ulcer, yet being dispersed, it will burn and scorch the Horses skin ; for burning doth purse the Skin, and maketh it run together, so as the Horse will never after prosper. I would have you get cases of Leather, fasten'd to a head-stall, made hollow like the shape of a Horses Ears, or make them lank-eared, which thing the Sadlers will help you in ; for many times, by long binding, the Ears are spoiled, so as that they must be cut off. After that you see the filthy Ulcer kill'd and dead, yet you must know whether the Blood is still putrified and corrupted, therefore you must at least let him blood, but always in several places ; And when you see the Blood fine

and pure, then give him some good scouring Drink, a quart of *White-wine*, a quarter of an ounce of *Rhubarb* in very thin slices, and laid in steep all night; an ounce and an half of *Alloes* in powder dissolved therein, half an ounce of *Agarick*, an ounce of *Sena* steeped in the Wine all night, and Three Races of *Ginger*, sliced and laid also in steep all night, and two ounces of Syrup of *Roses*; but the *Ruburb*, *Sena*, and *Ginger*, take out of the Wine before you put in the other Simples, and then make it blood warm, and give it the Horse, and so let him rest all that day, giving him nothing but Wheat-Straw at night, and the next day following a Bottle of sweet strong *Wort*, and a quarter of a pint of *Treacle*, and keep him warm. After all this wash his Body with *Buckeye*, and *Black-Soap*, and after cloath him and give him a sweat, and he will recover.

Of the Fistula.

This is a filthy Ulcer also, bred from some Ulcer not thoroughly cured. The Remedy is to search the depth thereof, with a Quill, or some other Instrument of Lead, for unless you find the bottom it is hard to cure, and having found the bottom, if it be in a place where you may cut with a Razor, make a slit against the bottom, so wide that you may boldly thrust in your Finger, to feel if any Bone or Gristle be perished, or spongy, or loose Flesh, which must be gotten out, then boyl a quartern of *Honey*, and an ounce of *Verdegrease* in Powder, stirring it continually until it look red, then Tent therewith and Boulster with Flax that it get not out; but if the place be where the Tent cannot conveniently be kept in, fasten on each side of the hole a Shoe-makers Thread over the Bolster, to keep the Tent in, renewing it every day until it leave Mattering, and make the Tent lesser and lesser, and sprinkle thereon a little slack *Lime*: But if you cannot come to tent it to the bottom, then take strong *Lye*, *Honey*, *Rock-Alom*, *Mercury*, and seeth them together, and apply them to the bottom of the *Fistula*. If the *Fistula* be in the Head, take the Juice of *Houseleek*, and dip a lock of Wool in it, and put the same in his Ears, and use it every day till it be whole.

These

These Infirmities are Cured by this following Medicines; all broken Bones, all Bones out of joint, swaying of the Back, weakness in the Back, Horse-hipped, Horse-sifted.

The Bones being placed in their true and proper place, according to the form of the number, you shall first bath the grieved place with warm *Patch-grease*, or *Piece-grease*, then clap about it a binding Plaister of *Pitch*, *Resin*, *Mastick*, and *Saller-Oyl*, well mixed together, and molten on the Fire; then fold the Limb hard about with fine *Flax*, and splint it with broad, flat, strong, and soft Splints, and remove not the dressing for the space of Fifteen days, except that you find the Rowlers to slacken, which is a very good sign, and then you may straiten them again, or if you find the Member to increase in swelling, and that the Rowlers grow straiter and straiter, then you may give the Member ease; for it is a sign that it was rowled too strait before; and thus you shall dress it but twice in Thirty days, or thereabouts, in which time the Bones will be knit; but if through the breach of Dislocation, you find any gross substance to appear about the grieved place, then you shall twice or thrice a day bath it with *Patch-grease*, and that will take away the Eye-sore in a short space.

Of Leporsie and universal Manginess.

The Horse that is infected with this Disease, will be full of *Scabs*, *Rowness*, and *Scurvey*, continually scratching. The Cure is, first for to let him blood on one side of the Neck, and give him a quart of New-Milk, and half a handful of the finest powder of *Brimstone*, thoroughly strained together, for that will expel the *Mange*; in all his Provender and Mashs, continued for Five or Six days, give him *Brimstone* and hot *Grains*; but if he will not eat it, give it him with *Milk*, and new *Ale-wort*: Then the next day let him blood on the other side of the Neck, at each time a good quantity; within two days after let him blood in the Breast-Veins; within the other two days in the Flank-Veins; within two days after under the Tail, so as that he becometh weak therewith: Keep his blood in a Pail, then seeth *Chamber-Lye* and *Bay-Salts* together

80 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

together, and let it be strong of the *Salt*, then take a quantity of the blood and stir them together, that the same be thick, and let him be rubbed all over with a *Pease-wisp* when he is hot, and let it dry upon him as much as may be, and the next day more of the same upon the old, that it may be as it were plaistered with the same; the which being done in the Sun, will easily be performed. After he hath rested upon the same two days, take *Buckly* and *Black-Soap*, being very warm, and wash all his body, and give him a quart of *Sack* and half a pint of the best *Treacle* to drink; and anoint his body with this same Ointment in every place. Take of *Lamp-Oyle* a quart, of fine Powder of *Brimstone*, a pint of the best *Treacle* to drink, and anoint his Body with this Ointment in every place.

Another of the same.

Take of *Lamp-Oyl* a quart, fine Powder of *Brimstone* a pint, two pounds of *Black-Soap*, a pint of *Tar*, a pint of *Barrows-Grease*, and so much of *Soot* in the Chimney, as will thicken it; compound them well together, anoint him all over with the same, being very hot, so let it rest till it fall off from him, then when it is all gone, wash him clean with *Soap-suds*, and thoroughly dry him, then cloath him and put him into a Sweat, and after dry him again, and keep him warm, and he will be in perfect health; and remember within a Month after, to let him bleed a Sottle at least, give him a Purging Drink, and with your best conveniency put him to Grass.

Of the Running of the Frust.

The Cure is, pare away the corrupt places, until you see it raw, and where the Issue is, then take a handful of *Soot*, and as much *Salt*, and the White of three *Eggs*, and beat them together, and having made the Shoe hollow, and tacked on, stop the Feet therewith very hard, and renew it every day for Seven days, and let not the Horse touch

key.

a quan-
e same
Pease-
uch as
e old,
; the
l. Af-
Buckly
body,
e best
Oint-
of fine
rink,
ace.

me a
nt of
y, as
noist
rest
him
oath
ain,
and
for-
best

you
l of
and
ow,
re-
rse
uch

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 81

touch any wet, and when he is whole, be sure after Travel to keep that Foot clean from the Gravel.

To make a Horse that he shall not Neigh.

Tye a Woollen Lift about the middle of his Tongue, and he shall not Neigh so long as it remaineth.

To make a White Mark on a Horse.

Take a Tyle and burn it to Powder, take *Daisy-Roots*, and the Roots of *White-Bryer*, of each alike; dry them, and make Powder thereof, then shave the place you will have white, and rub it very much with the Powder, then wash the place with this Water: Take a quantity of *Honey-Suckle-Flowers*, and a quantity of *Honey*, and the water that *Moles* have been sod in, and wash the place, and rub it very sore therewith; do this five days, and it will be White.

To ripen an Imposthume.

Take *Mallow Roots*, and *Lilly Roots*, and bruise them, and put into them *Hogs-grease*, and *Linseed-Meal*, and Plaster-wise lay it too.

Of a Farcin, or sudden breaking out in any part of the Body.

Take this Oyntment, and have it ready in your Stable: Three ounces of *Quick Silver*, put it into a Bladder; and two Spoonfuls of the Juice of *Limonds* and *Oranges*, shake them together, then take a pound of *Hogs-grease*, and of *Verjuice* an Ounce, beat them all in a Dish, and work them thoroughly together; and take a pound of fresh *Hogs-grease*, and anoint the same therewith, and slit the same if need be, then wash it, and put into his Ears the juice of *Ruga-weed*, and he shall recover.

12 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Of sinking a Fistula, or Wind-gall.

First sear the *Fistula*, and then take *Rozen*, *Sheeps-Tallow* and *Brimstone*, boyl them together, lay it on hot with a Cloth, and it will sink down.

Of a Wrench in the Fetter-lock, or any other Joynt that is suddenly done.

Take of *Narvile*, and *Black-Saps*, and boil them together a little on the Fire, and anoint it therewith.

Of a Blister.

Take the Juice of *Ground Ivy*, so much *Brimstone*, a quantity of *Tar*, and some *Alom*, and lay it to the Blister.

Of a Wind-Gall, that it shall not grow again.

When you have cut the Skin, take a Spoonful of *Oil-de-Ray*, a Spoonful of *Turpentine*, One pennyworth of *Verdigrease*, the white of an Egg, and a quarter of an Ounce of *Red-Lead*, boyl them together to a Salve, and lay the same to the place.

Of Curing a sudden Hurt.

Take *Wax*, *Turpentine*, *Rozen*, and *Hogsgrease* of the like quantity, and half so much *Tarr* as any of the other Simples, melt and boyl them together, and keep it ready for any accident. Lay it Plaister-wise.

Of the dangerous Galling of a Horse.

Take a Pottle of *Verjuice*, Two Penny-worth of green *Copperas*, boyl it into a Pint and half, wash and search the Hole therewith, and fill it with *Red Lead*, so let it remain three days untouch'd, then wash it with the same, and fill it with *Red Lead*, this will heal it, though it be galled to the body.

Repairing a broken Hoof, to make it grow again.

Take of *Garlick-heads* seven Ounces, of *Herb-grace* three handfuls, of *Allum* beaten and sifted, of *Barrows-grease* that is old Two pound, mingle all these with a handful of *Asses-dung*, and boyl them together, and anoint the Horse therewith.

Of Fretting of the Guts.

Take in the Morning a quart of good Ale, Four Ounces of Fennygreeke, Seven Ounces of Bay-berries, as much Long-pepper, and an Ounce of Ginger, Two handfuls of Water-cresses, a handful of Sage, another of Mint, beat them altogether in the Ale, then strain it, and give it him blood-warm; rope all his Legs, and tye him that he lye not down, put him into a sweat, keep him warm, give him no cold Water for Three days after, and feed him with dry Beans and Oats for his Provender.

To make a Horse follow his Master.

Take One pound of Oatmeal, a quarter of a pound of Honey, half a pound of Lumary, and make a Bag thereof, and bear it about you next your Skin, and labour therewith till you sweat, and wipe the sweat with the Bag, and keep the Horse a day and a night fasting, and give it him to eat, and also use to give him Meal and Bran, and he will follow you.

Of Bones out of Joynt.

The Cure is, bind all the Four Legs together, and to cast him on his back, and then to hoyst him from the ground with his heels upwards, so shall the weight of his Body cause the Joynt to shoot in again in its right place.

Of pulling out of Shivers or Thorns, and of Swelling.

The Cure is, to pull it out if it may be seen; but if it swell and cannot, then take Wormwood, Paretory, Bears-foot, Hogs-grease, and Honey, boyl them together, and being hot, make a Plaister; it is excellent for any Swelling, so also is Wine-Legs, Wheat-Flower and Cummen boyled together; and when it is at a head Launce it.

Of a Spungy Wart.

The Cure is, if it be long enough, to tye a Thread about it very hard, and it will eat it off, or else take it off with a hot Iron.

Of the Sinews cut and bruised.

Take of Tar, Bean-flower, and Oyl of Roses, and lay it hot to the place: Of the same effect are Worms and Sallera.

Oyl

Oyl fryed together: So is the Oyntment of *Worms*, which you may have at the Apothecaries.

Of the Curb.

This is commonly known; the Cure is, take a pint of *Wine-Lees*, a Porringer full of *Wheat-flower*, of *Cummin* half an Ounce, and stir them well together, and being made warm, charge the sore place therewith, running it every day once, for the space of Three or Four days, and when the swelling is almost gone, then draw it with a hot Iron, and cover the burning with *Pitch* and *Rosin* molten together, and laid on warm, and clap on Flocks of his own colour, and let him rest, and come in no Water for the space of Twelve days.

Another for the same.

Take an Iron, and make it red hot, and hold it against the Sore as nigh as you may, but touch not the Sore, and when it is warm, then take a Fleam and wet it in Six or Seven places full of *Nervil*, then take a Spoonful of *Salt*, and a penny-weight of *Verdigrease*, and the White of an Egg, and put all these together, and take a little *Flax* and wet it therein, and lay it to the Sore.

Of Wind Galls in Horses.

This Grief most Men know. The Cure is, wash the places with warm water, and shave off the Hair, then draw it with a hot Iron, in this manner ☞; that done, slit the middle Line which passeth right down through the Wind-gall with a sharp Knife, beginning beneath and so upwards, half an Inch, and thrust the Jelly out, then take also *Pitch* and *Rosin* molten together, lay them on hot, and Flocks upon them.

Of the Pipes, or Crutches in Horses.

This is a fretfish, waterish Matter, bred in the Pasterns of the hinder Legs, sometimes by foul keeping, but principally of liquid and thin humours resorting to the Joynt, whereby the Legs will be Swoln, Hot, and Scabby: The Cure is, to wash the Pasterns with *Beer* and *Butter*, which being dry, clip away all the Hair, saying the Fetterlock,

terlock, then take of *Turpentine*, *Hogs-grease* and *Honey*, of all a like quantity, mingle them in a Pot, and put unto them a little *Bole-Armony*, the yeolks of two *Eggs*, and as much *Wheat-Flower* as will thicken them, then with a Slice lay it on a Cloth, make it fast to go round about the Pastern, and bind it fast, renewing it every day, let him not come into any wet, but stand still, some will wash it only in *Gun-powder* and *Vinegar*.

Of the Gravelling of Horses.

The Cure is to pair his Hoof, and get out the Gravel, then stop it with *Turpentine* and *Hogs-grease*, molten hot, and then with Tow, and beware he come not out of the Stable till he be well.

The Ring-bone in Horses.

This is a Gristle growing about the Cornets of the Feet. The Cure is, to fire the Sore with the right Loyns from the Pastern to the Coffin of the Hoof, in this manner, I. I. I. and let the edge of the Drawing Iron be as thick as the back of a good thick Knife, burn it so deep that the Skin may look yellow, then cover it with Pitch and Rozen molten together, and lay thereon Flocks of the Horses colour: Some will eat it away with Corolives, as the Splent.

Of the Crown Scab.

This is a filthy stinking Scab, growing about the Cornets of the Hoofs: The Hair will Stair like Hogs bristles, and be always mattering, anoint when the Hair is lhaven away, with the Oyntment for the pains, Pag. 76. and keep it from wet.

These Infirmities are cured by the following Medicines, viz. Splints, Spavins, Curbs, Ringbones, Quinterbones, and all other Boney Exoreffions.

Take *White-Wine*, *Arsnick*, or *Mercury*, ground to Powder, and make a little slit upon the head of the Excreffion, the length of a Barly-corn, and down to the Bones: then raise up the Skin with a fine Corner, and put in as much of the *Arsnick* or *Mercury* as will lye upon Three half pence, then

then bind upon the Sore, a little hard *Plax-burds*; which done, tie up the Horse's head to the rack so as he may not bite the fore place, and let him stand for the space of Two or Three Hours, for in that time the anguish will be gone, and the Medicine shall have done working; then put the Horse to his Meat, either in the House or Abroad. And the Concreffion will fall away of it self; which seen, you may heal up the Sore.

Of the Retreat or clogging the Foot with the pick of a Nail.

The Cure is *Turperntine*, *Wax*, and *Sheeps-Suet*, moulten together, and pour into it melted and hot.

Of Surbaiting.

The Cure is, take off his Shooes, and make his Feet very clean, but pare no hoof away, then tack a hollow Shooe on, and take half a pound of the *Sword of Bacon*, a quarter of a pound of *White-Soap*, a handful of *Burnet*, a handful of *Bay-leaves*, and Four or Five Branches of the Herb *Grace*, stamp them well and fry them, and lay them to his Feet as hot as you can, both under and over the Foot, and keep him dry, renewing the Cure as you find occasion, Four or Five times till it be perfected.

Another.

When you find your Horse to be Surbaited, presently clap to each of his Fore Feet two new laid *Eggs*, and crush them therein, and then upon the top of them lay good store of *Cow-dung*, thus stop him four hours, and he will recover.

Instructions in giving of Fire, or using of Corrosives, which hee all sorts of Farcies, Cankers, Fistulas, Leprosies, Mangies, Scabs, &c.

There are two ways to give Fire, the One actual, and the other potential; the First is done by Medicine, either Corrosive, Putrefactive or Caustick. The actual Fire stoppeth the Corruption of Members, and stancheth blood, provided the Sinews, Cords, and Ligaments, be not touched; the best instruments to Cauterize, or Sear with, are of Gold or Silver; the second best are of Copper, the worst of Iron. The Potential Fires, are Medicines, Corrosive,

rosive, Putrefactive or Caustick (as we said before) Corrosives are simple or compound, the simple Corrosives are Rock-Allum, burnt and unburnt, Red Coral, Mercury sublimed, &c. The Compound Unguimum, Apostolorum, Unguimum Aegyptiacum, and Unguimum Coroscum, with others. Medicines Putrefactive, are your Arsnick, Resalgar, Chrysocolo, and Aconitum. Medicines which are Caustick, are strong Lye, Lime, Vitriol, Aquafortis, and the like. Corrosives are weaker than Putrefactives, and Putrefactives, are weaker than Causticks. Corrosives work in the soft Flesh, Putrefactives in the hard, and Causticks break the sound Skin. Thus you see the Use of these things, you may apply them at your Pleasure; for these cure all sorts of Farcies, Cankers, Fistula's, Leprosies, Maungies, Scabs, and such like poisonous Infections.

Of a Horse that is prick'd in the Foot with a Nail, or otherwise.

The Cure is, Cut the mouth of the Hole where the Prick is, as broad as a Two-penny piece, and search it clean, for else it may prove very dangerous; for Remedy take a handful of red Nettles, and beat them in a Mortar, put thereinto a spoonful of red Vinegar, and a spoonful of black Soap, and three spoonfuls of Boars-Grease or salt Bacon, beat them altogether, and make a Salve thereof, and thrust as much into the Sore as you can, and stop it from falling out; let it take no Wet, and it shall never rot farther.

Of the Quitterbone.

This is a breaking out of the top of the Cronet of the Hoof, commonly on the inside, and it cometh by pricking or gravelling; it will break forth with Matter, or a little deep Hole like a Thistle. The Cure is, To burn it about with a hot Iron, then take of Arsnick the quantity of a Bean, beaten into fine Powder, and put into the bottom of the Hole with a Quill; stop the mouth of the Hole close with Tow, and bind it so that the Horse may not come at it with his Mouth, and so let him rest that day; the next, if the Hole look black it is a good sign, then tent

88 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

it with *Hogs-grease* and *Turpentine* molten together with a Tent of Tow, and cover it with a Bolster of Tow dipt in that Ointment; continue so to do till you have got out that Core, and then see whether the loose Gristle in the bottom be uncovered, and feel with your Finger or a Quill if you be nigh it, and if you be, raise it with a crooked Instrument, and pull it out with a pair of Nippers, and then tent it with the said Ointment, and after take *Honey* and *Verdegrease* boiled together till it look red, and heal it therewith, laid upon Tow. Take heed that it heal not too soon, or close up too suddenly.

Of the Hoof-bound.

This is a shrinking together of the whole Coffin of the Hoof, whereby the Tuel of the Foot, which is inclosed in the same, is so pinched, that the Horse is very lame therewith, and especially after Travel; and if you knock them they will sound a little like to an empty Bottle; and if both Feet be not bound, you shall apparently see the Hoof that is bound to be less than the other. This proceeds from suffering the Feet to remain dry after great Travel. This Distemper is also common with a Fennets or Asses Hoofs, for that only wrinkleth and waxeth brittle, and by reason of the breadth and shallowness of the Hoof it cannot inclose the Tuel of the Foot, to strengthen it; and yet it is the worst Hoof. The Cure is, to open the Feet in the Quarters very much, so that you may well lay your Thumb betwixt the Frush of the Foot and the end of the Coffin where it principally bindeth; then raise both the Quarters of the Hoof with a Drawer from the Cronet unto the Sole of the Foot, so deep as you see the Dew come out, and also two raises of each side; then open the Foot within, and let him bleed in the Toes; if it be old, the Blood will be as cold almost as Water, for that it hath not been fed with Blood, wherein the vital Spirit is; and that is the cause of the Coldness, whereby it is apparent that the Hoof hath not prospered, but starved, for you shall see the Frush and all the sole of the Foot shrunk up and starved; then take away the sole of the Foot, and stop it with Nettles

with Nettles and Salt bruised gently together, not over hard, renewing it once a day for nine days, and be sure every day twice to anoint the Cronet of the Hoof; and at the end of the nine days, be sure every day twice thoroughly to anoint the Cronet of the Hoof; and after the nine days end, let his Feet be stopped with *Bran* and *Hogs-grease* boiled together, bound too as hot as may be, but still anoint the Hoof; and when you put him to Grass, let him not wear any Shooes, but put him into a Marsh or Meadow, deep of Grass, whereby his Feet will be always wet, and so enlarged again. Some ignorantly call this *Dry-Foundering*, when as all Foundering in that Foot proceeds from the descending of the Humours to the Feet, and this is clean contrary; and my Experience hath cured Horses that have been Hoof-bound four or five Years.

Of the Loosning of the Hoof.

This Grief, if it be loose round about the Hoof, then it cometh by Foundering; if it be in part, then by some other Anguish: if it come by Foundring, then it will first break into the Fore part of the Cronet, against the Toe; but if a chanel Nail or Trick, then the Hoof will loosen equally round, but if other Hurts, then right about the place that is offended, which should be well observed of the Farrier; but what Cause soever it is, be you careful for to keep open the hole in the bottom of the Foot, and restrain it above with the restrictive Plaster of *Bole-Armony*, *Beau-flower* and *Eggs*, mentioned in the Cure of the Prick of the Foot. You may take three Spoonfuls of *Tar*, a quarter of a pound of *Rosen*, a handful of *Tansy*, a handful of *Rue*, a handful of *Mint*, and as much of *Southernwood*, beat them altogether with a pound of *Butter*, and one penny-worth of *Virgin-wax*, and so make a Plaster, and bind it too for seven days, and it will be whole.

Of the casting the Hoof.

The cure is, Take of *Turpentine* one pound, of *Tar* half a pint, of *worrough Wax* half a pound, of *Sallet-Oyl* half a pint; boil all these together, until they be thoroughly incorporated,

corporated, then make a Boot of Leather with a strong Sole, fit for the Horse's Foot, to be buckled about the Pastern, then take a good quantity of *Flax* or *Tar*, and lay this Salve upon it for to cover the Foot, so as that the Boot may not any way grieve the Horse, renewing it every day until it be whole; then let him stand in the Stable upon a Bed of Cow-dung and Snails beaten together, which will increase the same, for fifteen days, and then put him to Grass. This Ointment should be in a readiness to anoint the Horses.

For Foundring, Freezing, or any other Imperfection of the Feet, or Hoofs of a Horse.

First pare thin, open the Heels wide, and shoe large, strong and hallow, then take a good quantity of *Cow-dung*, half so much *Grease* or *Kitchinstuff*, a like quantity of *Tar*, and a like quantity of *Soot*; boy all these very well together, and when boiling-hot as may be, see you stop your Horses Feet therewith dayly; and it will not only take away all Anguish, but also strengthen the Hoofs, and make them to endure any Labour. But when you journey or travel the Horse, (as Exercise availeth much for this Cure) then put in the aforesaid Stopping cold, the first night after his Labour, and add unto it the White of an Egg or two, for that will take away from the Heat and beating of the former days Labour, and will keep the Frush strong and dry. But in time of Rest, let it be boyling-hot as aforesaid. Now if the Heat be naturally brittle, or by Accident broken, or by the former Infirmary dried up and strained, then to enlarge it, to make it tough, and to make it to grow swiftly, take of *Pigs-Grease*, or of *Hogs-Grease*, of *Turpentine*, and of *Mastick*, of each a like quantity, and half so much *Lard* as of all the rest, melt all but the *Turpentine*, and being melted, take it from the Fire, and put in the *Turpentine*, stirring it about till it be well incorporated together; then put it into a Pot; and when it is cold, be sure you cover it close. With this Salve twice or thrice a day anoint the Cornets of the Horse's Hoofs, close by the Hair, at the setting on of the Hoof: it will make it shoot fast, and grow rough and large.

for Hurts upon the Cornets of the Hoofs; as, an Over-reach, Stub, or Prick, &c

First take of Soap, and of Salt, of each a like quantity, and mixt them together like a Past; then having cut out the Over-reach, or Hurt, and laid it plain, first wash it with Urine and Salt, or Beer and Salt, and with a Cloth dry it, then bind on the mixed Soap and Salt, renewing it once in twenty-four hours; and thus do (if the Wound be great) for three or four days; then having drawn out all the Venom as this Salt will quickly do) take a Spoonful or two of Train-Oyl, and as much Ceruse (which we call White Lead) and mix it together to a white Salve, then spread that upon the Sore Morning and Evening until it be whole, which will be affected suddenly: for nothing doth dry up sooner, nor is more kindly and natural for the breeding of a new Hoof than this, as you shall find by Experience.

To help the Surbating or Soreness of the Feet.

When you find your Horse to be surbated, presently clap on each of his Fore feet two new-laid Eggs, and crush them therein; then upon the top of them lay good Cowdung: thus stop them for four hours, and he will recover.

Of the Dry Spavin.

The Cure is, to wash it with warm Water, and shave off the Hair so far as the Swelling is, then scarifie the place, that it bleed, and take of *Cantharides* a dozen, and of *Extirbium* half a spoonful, break them into a Powder, and boyl them together, with a little Oyl of Bay; and being boyling-hot, with Feathers anoint the Sore and tye his Tail for wipeing it, and within an hour after set him in the Stable, and tye him so that he lye not down that Night (for the rubbing of the Medicine) and within a day after, anoint it with butter, for six days, then draw the sore place with an hot Iron; take a sharp one like a bodkin, somewhat bowing at the Point, and so upward betwixt the Skin and the Flesh, and thrust it in at the nether end of the middle Line an inch and a half, then anoint it with

92 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

with *Turpentine* and *Hogs-Grease* molten together, and made warm, renewing it every day once, for the space of nine days: but remember, that after this burning, you take up the *Master Vein*, which must be done in this manner: Cut the Horse upon some Straw, then having found the *Vein* mark well that part of the Skin which covereth it, and pull that aside from the Vein with your left Thumb, to the intent that you may slit it with a Razor, without touching the Vein, and cut no deeper then through the Skin, and that longest wise that the Vein goeth, and not above an inch, then will the Skin return again to the place over the Vein, with a *Cornet* uncover the Vein, and make it bare, thrust the *Cornet* underneath it, and raise it up, and put *Shoos-makers Thread* underneath, somewhat higher then the *Cornet* standing, slit the Vein long-ways, that it may bleed, and having bled somewhat from above, then knit it with a sure knot somewhat above the Slit, suffering it to bleed only from beneath, a great quantity, then knit up the Vein also beneath the Slit, with a sure Knot, then betwixt these two Knots cut the Vein asunder where it was Slit, and fill the Hole with Salt, then lay on this Charge. Take half a pound of *Pitch*, a quarter of a pound of *Rosen*, a quarter of a pint of *Tar*, boil them together, and being warm anoint all the inside of the Joint, and clap on Flocks of the Horses Colour, and turn him to Grass, if it may be, till he be perfectly whole, and the Hair grown again.

Another for the same.

Cut the Skin over the Veins, as aforesaid, and slit the Vein and cut it as aforesaid, then where the *Spavin* is highest, with a small Chissel of the breadth of a penny, strike off the quantity of an Almond, and no more; then take two penny worth of *Verdegrease*, another of *Narvil*, beat them small, and put it into the *Spavin*, and three days after wash the *Corsey*, with Bark-water or Vinegar: then take *Colman* and *Diaconum* upon a Linnen Cloth, and lay it to the *Spavin* every day, and for seven days after, a new Plaister, then draw it with a hot Iron, as aforesaid, and also a Change, and Flocks, as is before recited.

Of the wet or blood Spavin.

This Disease also is commonly known, and some call it the thorough *Spavin*, it is fed by a thin flexible Humour, by the Master Vein. The cure is, to shave off the Hair, and to take up the Vein in every part, as I shall describe in the Cure of the *Bone Spavin*, and then cut the Vein asunder, and draw it with a hot Iron, charge it and put on the Flocks, and it will perfectly heal and cure it, for I have proved it certain.

All these Distempers are cured by the Medicine following. All Watry Eyes. All Blood-shorten Eyes. All Dimness of Sight. All Lunatick Eyes. All Cankers in the Eyes. The Rin and the Web in the Eye. All pearles or Spots. All Fistula's in the Eyes. The Haw in the Eye.

Take true *Ground-Ivy*, which some call *Aleboof*, or the ordinary *Ground-Ivy*, and beat it well in a Morter and if it be very dry, drop a little *White Rose-water* into it, or a little of the Water of the Herb *Eyebright*, then drain it well into a clean Glass, and with that Juice wash, anoint, or tent the sores in the Eyes at least three or four times in a day: As for the *Haws* or *Haggs* in a Horse's Eye, every common Smith knows how to cut them away, and that easily.

For a Wrench or Sprain in the Pastern.

Take a Quart of *Brine*, seeth it till the scum arise, and then strain it, and put into it a handful of *Tansy*, a handful of *Mallows*, a Sawcer full of *Honey*, a quarter of a pound of *Sheeps Tallow*, beat them together, and set them on the fire, till they be well sodden, and then lay it hot to the Suint, and sew a Cloth fast about it, and so let it rest five days: and if this prevail not, wash the place, and shave away the Hair, saving the fetterlock; scarrifie it, and lay *Cantharides* to it, and heal it as the *Splint*.

Of a Horse that is Hipped.

The Horse that is hipped, is when his Hip-Bone is out of the right place; it may come by Stripe, Stretch, Slipping, Sliding or Falling; he will go sideling and the low Hip will fall lower than the other. The Cure is speedily

94 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

ly to take of Oyl de Bay, of *Dialthea*, of *Nerval*, of *Swiaca* greafe, of each half a pound, melt them together, stirring them continually until they be thoroughly mingled together, and anoint the sore place againſt the Hair with this Ointment every day once a day for fifteen days together, and make the Ointment to Sink well into the Fleſh, by holding a broad bar of Iron over the place anointed, to make it enter into the Skin; and if at the end of thoſe days it doth not mend, then ſlit a Hole downward into the Skin, an inch beneath the Hip-bone, make the hole ſo wide that you may eaſily thruſt in a Rowel with your Finger, and then with a little broad ſlice of Iron, looſen the Skin from the Fleſh above the Bone, and round about the ſame, ſo broad as the Rowel may lye flat and plain betwixt the Skin and the Fleſh; which Rowel ſhould be of ſoft Calves Leather, with a Hole in the miſt, like a Ring, having a Thread ty'd to it, to pull out when you would cleanſe the Hole: and if the Rowel be rowelled about with Flocks faſt ty'd on, and anointed with the Ointment of *Hogs-greafe* and *Turpentine* boiled together, it will draw ſo much the more. That done, tent it with a long Tent of *Flax*, dipt in *Turpentine* and *Hogs-greafe* made warm, and ſo renew it every day for fifteen days; and before that you dreſs him, let him be walk'd every day a quarter of an hour, and as it healeth, make the Tent every day leſs than the other; and as ſoon as he is whole, draw a hot Iron-croſs his Loins of eight or nine inches long, right over againſt the Hip-bone, ſo as the rowelled place may be in the miſt thereof, and burn him no deeper, but ſo as the Skin may look yellow; then charge all the Skin over all the Buttocks with this Charge: Take of *Pitch* one pound, of *Reſin* one pound, of *Tar* half a pint, boil them together, and being well warmed, ſpread it with a Clout ty'd to a Stick, clap as many Flocks on the Horſe as will ſtick, that he may travel the more at his own Will.

Of Stiſing, and Hurts in the Stiſter

This is when the Stiſling-bone is removed from its right place; but if it be not removed, then the Horſe is hurt, and not ſtiſed. The Cure is in all Points like to the *Shoul-*

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 95

ter-Pight, saying that the Pins need not to be so long because the Stifling-place is not so broad; and standing in the Stable, let him have a Pastern with a Ring upon his Fore-leg, and thereunto fasten a Cord, which Cord must go about his Neck, and let it be so much strained as may bring his Fore-leg forward; then the other to keep the Bone from starting out: but if it be but a Hurt with some Stripe or Strain, then the bone will not stand out, but perhaps the place may be swoln, then anoint it with the Ointment last mentioned in the Receipt going before, every day for fifteen days; then rowel him with a heme Rowel, and cleanse the Hole every day, by running the Rowel anointed with the said Ointment.

Of Wounds.

The Cure is, Take of *Turpentine*, of *Mel Rosarum*, of *Oil of Roses*, of each a Quartern, and a little *Unwrought Wax*, and melt them together, stirring them together continually; and so use the Tent or Roll, as occasion shall serve.

A Receipt for any extraordinary Cold or Cough, or Purfiness in a Horse, which the weak Farrier calls Broken-Winded.

I will here set you down the Secrets of my Knowledge, in some ready, easy, approved Receipts, which I never found to fail. When you find your Horse taken with any extreame Cold, or dry Cough or Purfiness (which ignorant Farriers call *Broken-winded*) you shall take three quarters of an ounce of the Conserve of *Elecampane*, and dissolve it in a pint and a half of the best Sack, and so give it to the Horse with a Horn, in the Morning fasting, and ride him a little after it; and this you may do divers Mornings together until you perceive the Infirmary decrease and wast away. The Simple Conserve of *Elecampane* is of excellent use; it taketh away any ordinary Cold, or Stopping, it comforteth the Lungs, enlargeth the Wind, purgeth the Head of all filthy Matter, and dissolveth many other Obstructions, yet is not the best Conserve, nor worketh the best Effect, if the Infirmary be old and dangerous, or if there be any Attainture in the Lungs or Liver, therefore in that

56 **The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.**

that Case you shall fly to the compound Conserve, which is made in this manner: Take the best candy Roots of *Elecampane* that can be procured, and beat them in a Mortar with the Syrup of *Coltsfoot* till it be brought to a very thin Substance, then with the finest refined *Sugar* thicken it, till it be reduced to the true Body of a Conserve; then keep it close in a Galley-pot, and use it with *Sack*. I have known by the daily Use of this Conserve, divers dry (and supposed incurable) Coughs that have been taken away, together with the Heaving of the Body, and the Wind so enlarged, that albeit the Motion was before swift, like the broken-winded, yet it hath come to a moderate and slow Temper, and the dry Cough which did accompany it hath been quite gone. Now if you find any Difficulty in making or proving of these Medicines before shewed, or that the Infirmary not being great or dangerous, you may possibly think a Medicine of less force, and easier to compass would accomplish it; then you shall take of the Syrup of *Coltsfoot* an ounce, of the fine Powder of *Elecampane*, of *Anniseseeds*, and of *Liquorice*, of each half an ounce, of brown *Sugarcandy* an ounce, divided into two parts, then with as much *Sweet Butter* as will suffice, work all the former Powders, and one part or a half of the *Sugarcandy*, and all the Syrop into a stiff Past, then divide into two or three Balls, and roll them into a round form, or of the Fashion of an Egg, and after roll them all over in the other half or part of the *Sugarcandy*, and then give the whole quantity at one time to the Horse in the manner of a Pill, and give them in the Morning fasting; then ride the Horse half an hour after the giving, and let him fast two hours at the least after he cometh in, and let him be warm cloathed, and stopped, and his Limbs well rubbed, especially his Head; let him by no means drink any cold Water, but so as that he may have Exercise after, and let his Exercise be moderate, and not violent; let his Hay be a little sprinkled with Water, and his Cats with Beer and Ale; as for the Bread, 'tis of it self moist enough; and let all his Meat be generally well dusted, sifted, or chipped, for nothing is more offensive to a Horse than Foulness and Drunkenness.

nor more comfortable than Cleanness, provided that your Corn be not green and unsweet in the Mow or Reek, nor your Hay rank or rotten. Thus you shall do several Mornings till you find Amèndment, neither shall you spare any Travel or Occasion, but, having Medicine about you, use it in your Journeying, for this doth not take away any thing to weaken Nature, but adds to the Force thereof.

For any dangerous Bots or Maw-worms.

Take as much *Precipitate* (which is *Mercury* calcined) as will gently lye upon a Silver Two-pence, and lay it on a piece of *Sweet-Butter* almost as big as a Hens Egg, in the manner of a Pill; and then in the Morning Fasting, the Horse having stood on the Muffel or empty Rack, if it be possible, or otherwise (if the Extremity of the Disease compel you) at any other time, draw forth the Horse's Tongue, and make him to swallow the Pill, then chase him a little up and down, and after set him up warm, making him fast full two hours after, and it will kill all manner of *Worms* whatsoever; yet in the Administration hereof, you must be wondrous circumspect and careful, for in the *Precipitate* there is a strong poysonous Quality, so that by no means there must be taken more than is prescribed, except with good Caution. Again, If you mix the *Precipitate* with a little *Sweet-Butter*, as much as a Hasel-Nut, before you lay it up in the great Lump of *Butter*, it will be the better, and allay much of the evil quality. But this I leave to your own Discretion, assuring you, that there is not any thing comparable to this for this Infirmary.

To heal or dry up any old Ulcer or Cancerus Sore.

Take *Mastick*, *Frankincense*, *Cloves*, *Green Coperas*, and *Brimstone*, of each a little quantity, of *Myrrhe* double as much as of any one of the other; beat all to a fine Powder, then burn it on a chafing-dish of Coals, but let it not flame; then as the Smoak ariseth, take a handful of fine Lint, or Tow, and hold it over the Smoak, so that it may receive all the Perfume thereof into it; then when it is well perfumed, put the Lint into a close Box, and so keep it: When

98 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

you have occasion to use it, first wash the Sore with Urine, then dry it, and lastly, lay on some of this Lint, or Tow, and thus do twice a day, and it is a speedy Cure. And as this is Sovereign for any Horse, so it is sovereign for any Man's life.

For any Sore Eyes in Horses.

Take the Shells of seven or eight Eggs, and cleanse away from them the Slime, then put those Shells between two clean Tiles, and so lay them in hot glowing Embers, and cover them all over, and on every side, and so let them lie a good space, till that the Shells be all dried, then take them up, and beat the Shells to a very fine searst Powder, then with a Goose's Quill blow this Powder into the Horse's Eye that is offended with Pin and Web, Film, or any other of those Distempers, and it is a certain Cure; and thus do Morning, Evening, and at Night. But if it be a watery or inflamed Eye, for any Bruise, Stripe, or descending Humour, then take a Spoonfull and a half of fine searst Powder of White Sugar-candy, and being mixt together with as much May-Butter (if you can get it, or for want thereof, the best Sweet-Butter) work both these Powders into a gentle Salve, and therewith anoint the Horse's Eye Morning, Noon, and Night, for it cleanseth, purgeth, comforteth, and cooleth.

For an old Strain or Lameness in the Joints sinewy.

Take Boars-Grease, Peledrmoniack, Black-Soap, and Nerve-Oil, of each a like quantity, boil them altogether, and then apply it hot to the Grief, rubbing and chafing it in exceedingly, and also heating it very well, either with a hot Brickbat or hot Fire-shovel: thus do once a day until the Pain be gone.

Of a Back-Sinew Strain, or any other Strain.

Take an ounce of Turpentine, and two or three spoonfulls of Aqua vita, and beat them together in a Bladder, or other vessel, until they come to a perfect Salve; then anoint the Strain

The Gentleman's Compliant Jockey. 99

Strain very well through with, and beat it in, either with a hot Brick, or else a Bar of Iron; and thus doing three or four times, it will take away the Strain.

For any desperate Strain in the Shoulder, or other hidden Parts, or any Fistula, Pole-Evil, or other Impostumation and Swelling.

Take a large Earthen Vessel of a Gallon, and almost fill it with the Herb *Arsmart* and *Breaktime* equal in quantity, and equally mixt; then put to them as much of the old and strongest Urine that can be got, as will cover the Herbs all over, and fill the Vessel full; then cover the pot close with a Stone Board, or such like thing, and so let it stand, for this can never be too old. Now when you have occasion to use it for any Grief aforesaid, you shall take an Earthen Pipkin, and put therein both of the Urine and of the Herbs, so much as shall be convenient for the Grief; and you shall boil it well upon the Fire: Then if it be for a Shoulder-Strain, you shall take an old Boot, and cut off the Foot, so that you may draw it over the Horse's Hoss, and about his Knee, almost to the Elbow of his Shoulder, keeping the nether part of the Boot as close and as strait about his Leg as may be, but the upper part (which covereth all the Shoulders) must be wide and spacious; into this Boot thrust all your Mixture as hot as the Horse can suffer it, and lay it fast and close about the Shoulders, especially before and behind; then driving up the upper part of the Boot, so fasten it to the Main of the Horse, that it may by no means slip down, but keep constant and firm; and thus you must do once or twice a day, till the Grief be gone. As for the Effect thereof you shall find it, for this is the most violent of all Medicines; so that if there be any foul Matter that must come forth, this will in an instant bring it to a Head, ripen, break it, and heal it; if there be no such things, then in as short a time it will drive away the offending Humours, take away the Swelling, and give present Ease. Yet would I have you to use this but in Extremity, because for the time the Torment is almost insufferable, and indeed not to be endured but only

100 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

only by Horses. Now if it be a *Fistula*, or any such like *Impostumation* or *Swelling*, then you may spare the Boot, and only lay on the Medicine in the manner of a *Poultis*, and it will be as sufficient.

Of a False Quarter.

This is a Rift most commonly on the inside of the Hoof; it cometh by the evil paring of the Hoof; the Horse will halt, and the Rift will bleed. The Cure is, Cut so much away on the side of the Shooe where the Grief is, so as that the Rift may be uncovered, then open the Rift with a Draw-er, and fill it with a Roll of Toe, dipt in *Turpentine*, *Wax*, and *Sheeps-Suet* molten together, renewing it every day till it be whole. When the Rift is closed, draw him betwixt the Hair and the Hoof with a hot Iron overthwart the Place, whereby the Hoof will shoot all downward, and ride him with another Shooe till he be throughly whole.

For an Over-reach on the Heel.

Take the *White of an Egg*, and *Bole-Armony*, mingled together with a little *Flax*, and renew it for four or five days.

For an upper Taint or an Over-reach upon the Back, *Sinews of the Shank*, somewhat above the Joint.

This is a swelling of the Master-Sinew, which proceeds from this, that the Horse doth over-reach, and strike that Sinew with the Toe of his Hinder-Foot, which causes the place to swell, and the Horse to halt. The Cure is, To wash the place with warm Water, and to shave off the Hair as far as the Swelling goes, and to scarifie every place of the Sore lightly with a Razor, that the Blood may issue forth; then take of *Cantharide*, and *Eusorbium* half an ounce, mingle them together with half a quartern of Soap, and with a Slice spread some of the Ointment over all the Sore, and let him rest for an hour after; let him stand without Litter, and the next day dress him so again; the third day anoint the Sore with *Butter*, and continue so to do for nine days after; then take three handfuls of *Mulleins*, a handful of *Sage*, and a *Rose-cake*, and boil them in Water,

and

key. The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 101

and when they are soft, put a pound of *Butter*, and half a pint of *Sallet-Oil*, to the Water; and being warm, wash the place four or five times together therewith.

Of the Nether Joint.

This is a Bladder full of *Felly*, like to a *Wind-gall*, not apparent but by feeling, growing in the midst of the Pastern, above the Frush. It proceeds from some Strain, Wrench, or Over-reach; the Nether-Joint towards the Fetterlock will be hot, and somewhat swoln. The Cure is, Tye him about the Joint with a Lint somewhat hard, and it will cause the Bladder to appear to the Eye, then lance it, and thrust out the *Felly*; then take the *White* of an Egg and Salt beaten together with a little Tow, and bind it unto it, renewing it once a day for five or six days.

Of the Serew, or Serow.

This is like a *Splint* in manner of a Gristle, as great as an *Almond*; it groweth on the Foreleg. The Cure is, Take an *Onion* and pick out the Core, and put therein a Spoonful of *Honey*, a quarter of a pound of unslack'd Lime, three penny-worth of *Verdegroase*, and roast the *Onion*, and bruise it, and lay it hot, having first cut the Skin.

All these Infirmities are cured by this Medicine following: Fevers in general, the Pestilence, the Falling-Evil, the Palsie or Shaking-Evil, the Night-Mare, the Hide-bound, all Consumptions, the Breast-grief, all Tiredness, the Loathing of Meat, casting out of drink, all Surfits, the Hungry-Evil, the sick Liver, sick Gall, sick Splen, sick Kidneys, the Yellow, the Dropsie, Costiveness in the Body, the Biss, all Worms, Pissing Blood, mattering of the Tard, shedding of the seed, Falling of the Tard, Eating of Hens-dung, the falling of the Crest.

If the Horse has been brought weak by Sicknaess, and that you find it proceedeth from some inward Infection, or Corruption of Blood, you shall give him in the Morning, fasting, two Spoonfuls of the Powder of *Diapensa*, well brewed with four Spoonfuls of *Honey*, tost to and fro

in a pint of *White-wine*, or *Muscadine*, and *Malnesey*, and ride him afterwards an hour in the Sun; then set him up warm in the Stable, and let him fast an hour; give him such Provender he will eat, and his Hay sprinkled with a little Water. But if his Sicknes proceed from any cold Cause, or from any riding and too sudden cooling, or from washing when he was hot, or such like; then you shall give the same quantity of *Diapente* and *Honey* in Sack, or other hot Wine in the manner aforesaid: But if his Sicknes be less contagious, or that Wine is not ready to be had, then you shall give the same quantity of the *Powder* and *Honey*, either in a quart of strong Ale, or a quart of strong Beer, observing all the Instructions formerly declared. Now for as much as this Powder of *Diapente* may be many times wanting, or at least hard to be got on the sudden, as we have formerly said, therefore in case of such Extremity you shall take a good handful of *Celandine* Roots, Leafs and all, and having pick'd and cleansed them, you shall take of *Wormwood* and *Rue*, of each half a handful, boil these in a pot of strong Ale or Beer till the full half be consumed, then strain it, and dress the Herbs, and dissolve into the drink, half a pound of *Sweet Butter*, and an ounce and a half of the best Treacle; being no more but lukewarm, give it the Horse to drink in the Morning fasting, and walk him an hour after, then set him up warm and let him fast another hour; then give him meats as aforesaid: And do this divers Mornings, according to the greatness of his Sicknes. Now for this Cure you must by no means forget to let the Horse bleed in the Neck-Vein, an hour or two before you give him the first drink, and let him bleed till you see the corrupt Blood change, and begin to look pure; to know which, you shall save the first Blood and the last Blood in two Sawcers, and as they cool they will easily shew you the difference. Now if your Horse happen to fall suddenly Sick upon you as you travel, when there is no Town nor Help near you, then you shall presently alight from his Back, and with a sharp pointed Knife, or Bodkin, or for want of both, with a sharp pointed strong Tag, you shall let him bleed in the Root of the Mouth,

amongst

amongst the Bars, somewhat near to his uppermost Teeth, and make him bleed well, walking him forward, and suffering him to champ and eat his own Blood; which is very wholesome for him at that time, and almost a present cure. Now if the Blood stanch of it self, (as commonly it will) then you shall presently piss in his Mouth, and so ride him with all Gentleness and Ease homeward; and being set up warm, wash his Mouth and Nostrils with Vinegar, and the next Morning let him Blood in the Neck-Vein, and give him either of the Drenches before prescribed, and no doubt but you may hold on your Journey without danger. Now if in the pricking of the Mouth, you either stick your Knife too deep, or else cut the Vein asunder, whereby you cannot stanch the Blood (as many times it happeneth) in this case you shall put some big round piece of Wood into the Horse's Mouth (to keep him from biting,) and then take a little of the fine Down of a Hare's Skin or Cony-Skin, or (for want of them) the fine Lint of any Woollen or Linnen cloth, and hold it hard to the Wound; and it will stanch it, such care being taken, as that it be not to be lick'd away with the Horse's Tongue.

For the Malender.

This is a Scab growing in the form of Lines or Streaks over the Bend of the Knee, in the inside of the Leg. The cure is, wash it with warm Water, and shave the Scab clean away, then take a spoonful of Soap, as much Lime, and make it into a paste, and spread as much on a Clout as will cover the Sore; bind it fast, renewing it every day for three days together, then anoint the same with *Oyl of Roses*, to cause the Crust to fall away, and then wash it with Urine, and strow on the powder of *Oyster-shells*.

Another of the same.

Take a Barrell'd Herring with a soft Row, and two spoonfuls of *Black-Soap*, half an ounce of *Allum*, and bruise them together, and lay it to the Sore three days.

Of the Splint.

This Soreness is known to most Men: The Cure is, Wash it with warm Water, and shave off the Hair, and lightly scarify all the sore place with a point of a Razor, so as that the Blood may issue forth; then take of *Cambrides* half a spoonful, and of *Eusorbum* as much, beaten into fine powder, and mingle them together with a spoonful of *Oyle de Bay*, and then melt them in a little pan, stirring them well together, so that they may not boil over; and being so boiling-hot, take two or three Feathers, anoint all the sore places therewith, and let not the Horse remove from the place for two hours after. Afterwards carry him away, and tie him so that he cannot touch the Medicine with his Lips, and also let him stand without Litter that day and a night, and within two or three days after anoint the Sore with Butter for nine days.

Another for the same.

Take an Onion and pick out the Core, and put therein a spoonful of unslack'd Lime, and four penny weight of *Verdegrease*, and half a pound of *Lavender-seed*, and roast the Onion until it be soft, and then cut the Skin a little, that the Medicine may enter to fret the Malady out, and let the Hair remain, and the Medicine lye to it three days.

For Foundring.

Before I enter to express the Cure, I would have you diligently to note the cause of this Disease. The Causes of *Foundring* are either from superfluous and over-much Eating and Drinking, or from immoderate and extreme Labour, or abundance and fulness of Humours. The undoubted and infallible Cure is, Garter each Leg immediately one handfull above the Knee, (and with a Lint good and hard) then walk him, chase him into a Heat, and being somewhat warm, let him Blood in both the Breast-Veins, 2 or 3 Quarts, and reserve the same, continually stirring it with your hands together, to gather out the clods thereof: then take thereof two quarts, of *Wheat-flower* half a peck,

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 105

peck, six Eggs, Shells and all, and of *Bole Armony* half a pound, of *Sanguis Dragonis* half a quartern, and a quart of strong Vinegar, mingle them altogether, and charge all his Shoulders, Breast, Back, Loinis, and Fore-legs, therewith, and walk him upon some hard Ground, suffering him not to stand still; and when that the Charge is dry, refresh it again; and having walked him three or four hours together, lead him into the Stable, give him a little Mash of Malt, and some Hay and provender, and then walk him again, for four or five days, renewing the Charge upon him as it dryeth, so long as it lasteth, and keep it warm, with a thin Dyet: but if you see the Horse to be afraid to set his Hinder-feet to the Ground, and to be so weak behind, as to stand quivering and shaking, and coveting to lie down, Garter him also about the Hoofs, on the Hinder-legs, and let him Blood also in the Thigh-Veins, to the quantity of a Pottle, and so double your Charge in quantity, and therewith charge both Hinder-legs, Reins and Flanks, and all against the Hair; and if you find him feeble, by drawing so great a quantity of Blood, give him a quart of *Malmsey*, and a little *Cinnamon*, *Mace*, and *Pepper*, finely beaten into a Powder, made lukewarm, and let him be walk'd and chafed up and down, if he be able to go; but if he be not able, than tie him to the Rack, and let him be hanged with Canvis or Ropes so as he may stand upon the Ground on his Feet, and not suffered to lie down; then pare all his Feet so thin, that the dew come forth, and tack on the Shoes again, Stopping the Feet with *Brain* and *Hogs-grease* hotted together, as hot as he can endure it, and wrap them in Cloaths even to the Pasterns, tying the Clouts fast. Let his Diet be thin, and give him no cold Water, and so soon as he is able, let him almost be continually walk'd, unless he be so long gone that his Hoofs begin to loose, or that it break forth at the Cronets of the Hoofs; then take two Eggs, as much *Bole Armony* and *Barn-flower* as will thicken the same, and mingle them well together, and make thereof a plaister, such as may close each Foot round about, somewhat above the Cronet, and bind the same fast that it fall not away, or be removed for two days together;

106 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

let the Soles of his Feet be cleaned and stopp every day once, and the Cronets but every two days and not walk for loosing his Hoofs: but when he amendeth, walk him upon some soft Ground fair and softly; but if it break off above the Hoof, then take all the fore-parts of the Sole cleave away, leaving the Heels whole, then stop him, and address him about the Cronet as aforesaid; if this Grief (though it be very dangerous) be espied in time, it may be cured.

For the Shoulder-pight.

This is when the pitch or point of the Shoulder is displaced; which if it be, the point will stick out farther than his Fellow, and the Horse will halt downright. The Cure is, To make him for to swim in a deep Water seven or twelve turns, to try if he be able to make the joint return to his right place, then make two tough Pins of Ash-Wood, of the bigness of your Little-finger, Diagonally and thrust in one of the Pins from above downward, so as both the Ends may equally stick without the Skin; and if the Pin of Wood will not easily pass through, make it away with an Iron pin, then make two Holes cross to the first Holes, so as the pin may cross the first pin right in the midst, with a right Cross; the first pin should be somewhat flat in the midst, to the intent the other being round might pass the better without stop, and close the Infer together; then take a piece of a Line, somewhat bigger than a Whipcord, and at one end make a Loop, which being put over one of the pins ends, so as it may lie between the pins ends and the Skin, fasten the least end with a Pack-Needle and Thread unto the end of the Cord, so as it may not slip; but first anoint both the pricks and Cord with Hogs-grease, then bring him into the Stable, and let him rest the space of nine days, but let him lie down as little as you can, and put a Pastern on the Fore-leg, so that it may be bound with a Cord unto the Foot of the Manger, to keep the Leg in the Stable more forward always than the other: and at nine days end pull out the pricks, and anoint the places with Diacon, or Hogs-grease, and turn him to Grass.

For a Frothy Hoof.

First with an Instrument make hollow the Extremities of the Hoof on the outside till the principal Vein break: let the Blood run forth, then fill up the Hole with fine Salt and Hurds steeped in Vinegar, and then bind them so that they shall not fall off: This is a sure way to make a hard and a sound Hoof.

For the blasting of the Hoof.

You must first cut the Hoof round about the outside, then pull away the Sole of the Foot, then let the part bleed well, then put in a Tent of *Whites of Eggs*, bind the Foot about with a Band; after two days wash the sore in Vinegar somewhat hot, fill it with fine Salt and Tarta beaten together, cover it with Hurds steeped in strong Vinegar. *Probation.*

For a Pinch or a Gall in the Withers.

First cut out the dead Flesh, and make a Tent with the White of an Egg, and then wash the part with warm *White-Wine*, and afterwards anoint the sore place with *White Sweet Suet*.

A present Remedy for the Staggers.

When you find your Horse distempered in his Head, then take a piece of Woollen Cloth and bind it fast to the end of a stick, being well rubbed with good *Barbery-sap*, and then put it into both his Nostrils with as much ease as you can, and withall draw it forth very gently again. This is a perfect Remedy.

For the Strangles.

First, when you see the Strangles growing, prick them under the Throat in the Morning, and after cover the Horse's Head with a Linnen Cloth, and then rub him often under the Throat with *Fresh Butter* on the sore place.

For the swelling of the Fore-legs.

This Distemper cometh after great Pains and Labour; the efficient Causes are many, but principally, that he was tra-

108 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

travell'd when young, before he was cleansed from his Humours; that he hath been travell'd when he was full; that he might also have too much Rest, and was not kept with moderate Diet; that he fed too much on green Meat; that he washed after Labour, and such like. But if the Horse be naturally fleshly-limbed he will never be free, but as soon as he is cured upon Travel he will swell again, and therefore such Jades should be gelt and put to Cart, and never suffered to get Colt. The Cure is divers; Take of *Mallows* three or four handfuls, *Rose-cake* and *Sage* a handfull, boil them in Water, and thereunto put half a pound of *Butter*, and half a pint of *Sallet-Oyl*; being made warm, wash him twice a day for three or four days.

Another for the same.

Take *Hemlock* and stamp it, and mingle it with *Sheeps-dung* and *Vinegar*, and having made a *Plaster*, lay it all over the Swelling.

Another for the same.

Take *Wine-Lees* and *Cumin*, and boil them together, and put thereinto a little *Wheat-flower*, and charge all the Swelling therewith, and walk him often and apace to heat him; and if this will not serve, then take up the great Vein above the Knee, on the inside, suffering him not to bleed from above, but from beneath: If he be clean and lean-limbed, use him, as I have exprest, to a little Butter and Beer warmed, and his Feet well stopped with *Com-dong* is sufficient after his Travel; but if he be so fleshly-limbed that this will not help, cut his Throat, and wash him with his own Blood, and he will never after swell.

All these Infirmities are Cured by this following Medicine: Impostumes in the Ears. Ulcers in the Nose. All Wens whatsoever. The Colts-Evil. The Swelled Stones. Incontinency or Bursting.

For any of these outward Remedies or Swellings, you shall take a penniworth of *Pepper* beaten to fine Powder, a spoonful of *Swine-grease*, the Juice of a handfull of *Rue*,
two

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 109

two Spoonfuls of any Wine *Vinegar*, and mix them well together; then if the Swelling be about the Horse's Head, Face, or Throat, you shall take *Flax-hurds*, and steep them therein, and stop it hard into the Horse's Ears, and stitch the Tops together with a Needle and Thread, renewing it once in two days, till the Swelling go away: but if it be in any other part of the Body, then with this Ointment you shall anoint the grieved place twice a day, till the Infirmity consume away. Now for the swelling about the *Cods*, or *Privy-Members*, it shall be good before you anoint them with this Ointment, to bathe them with cold Water, as either by trotting the Horse into some deep Pond, or else by taking a pail of cold Water, and dipping a Cloth into the same to bathe, clap and wash the Cods therewith; then drying them with another clean cloth, lay on the Ointment, which is a present cure.

For a Grief in the Shoulder, that hath been there a long time.

The cure is, Give him a slit on both sides, an Inch under the Shoulder-bones, then with a Swan's Quill put into the slit, blow up first the one Shoulder, and then the other, as big as you can possibly even up to the Withers, and with your hand strike the Wind equally into every place of the Shoulders, and when they are both full, then beat all the windy places with a Hasel Wand-over all the Shoulders, then with a flat slice of your Iron loosen the Skin from the Flesh; that done, rowel the two slits or cuts with two round Rowels of Leather with a hole in the midst, that the Matter may issue forth; and let such Rowels be three Inches broad, and so put in, that they may be plain and flat within the Cut: Then take of *Pitch*, and of *Resin*, of each a pound, of *Tar* half a pint, boil these together, and when it is somewhat cool, draw all the Shoulders very thick therewith; that done, clap on as many Flocks as will stick, of the Horse's colour, and every day cleanse both the Wounds and Rowels, and put them in again, continuing thus for sixteen days; then take them out, and heal up the Wounds with *Hogs-grease* and *Turpentine* molten together, renewing it until the Wounds be whole; but let the

Flocks

110 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Flocks lie until they fall off, and let the Horse run at Grass at least half a year.

Of the Wrenching of the Shoulder.

This may proceed from a Fall, sudden or short Turning, rash running out of some Door, or by some sudden stop, Strife of a Horse, or such like; which being done, he shall trail his Legs to him close as he goeth. The cure is, To let him bleed in the Breast as soon as it is perceived (and the sooner the better) three pints at the least, and to keep all the same blood in a pot, and thereinto put a quart of strong Vinegar, six Eggs broken; Shells and all, and so much Wheat-flower as will thicken that Liquor; put thereinto one pound of Bole-Armony, beaten into powder, and two ounces of Sanguin Dragons, so as the Flower may not be perceiv'd; and if it be too stiff, soften it with Vinegar, then with your hand daub all the Shoulder from the Main downward, and betwixt the fore-bowels, all against the Hair; and let not the Horse remove until the Charge be surely fastned to the Skin; then lead him into the Stable, and suffer him not to move all that day, keeping him with a spare Diet at least fifteen days together; and let him not remove out of his place, but only lie down all that time, and every day refresh the Shoulder-point with this Charge, laying still new upon the old; and at fifteen or twenty days end, lead him gently, to see if he be amended; the which if he be, let him rest for the space of two Weeks without Travel: but if he be nothing amended, then rowel him with a Leather-Rowel upon the Shoulder-point, and keep him rowelled for the space of fifteen days, renewing the Rowel, and cleansing the Wound every other day: walk him up and down very gently, always turning him on the contrary side; and if he go well, pull out the Rowel, and heal up the Wound with Turpentine and Hogs-grease, and a Tent of Flax. But if the Hurt were so violent, that all this will not help him, then draw him chequerwise with a hot Iron over all the Shoulder-point, and let him go to plow two hours every day in soft ground, where he may not be over-much strained; and if it be possible,

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 111

sible, let him be let blood as soon as he is hurt in those place Veins, and also in the place, or as near as is possible, where the Hurt or Blow is, to the intent that no Blood do congeal there, or that it tarry till the Flesh become black with the Bruise.

Of Splayting of the Shoulder.

This also may proceed from some Slip, whereby the Shoulder parteth from the Breast, and so leaveth a Rift or Rent in the Flesh and Bilm under the Skin, which causeth him also to trail his Leg after him. The Cure is, to put a pair of Strait Pasterns on his Fore-feet, and to let him stand still in the Stable; then take of *Dialthea* one pound, of *Sallet-Oil* a pint, of *Oil de Bays* half a pound, of *Fresh-Butter* half a pound, and melt them together, anoint the grieved place therewith round about the inside of the Shoulder, and within two or three hours after all the Shoulder will swell; then with a *Phlam* strike all the swelling places, or with a *Wasp* hot Iron, the head whereof should be an Inch long, to the intent the Corruption may run out: and still anoint the same very often with the said Ointment; and if it gather to a head, then lance it where it is most soft, and tent it with *Hogs-Grease* and *Turpentine*, and a Tent of *Flax*.

A Remedy for the Spavins.

First, When the swelling appears first in the Ham, lift up the Thigh, and strike the principal Vein with a *Scam*, let out the Blood till no more will come, and then burn the *Spavin* long-ways and a-cross: Heal the Burn as you do for the swelling of the *Pastern*.

For the Cest-Evil.

The Cure is, Wash the Sheath clean, with lukewarm *Vinegar*, draw out his Yard, and wash it also, then ride him to some running Stream up to the Belly, to allay the Heat, and do this lustily for a quarter of an hour, and so every day after for three or four days.

112 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

For the swelling of the Cods.

Take strong *Vinegar*, white *Chalk* well powdered, stir it well, and make a *Paste*, mingle good store of *Salt* finely powdered, and with that *Paste* anoint the *Cods* of the *Horse* about three times a day; and in few days this will help him.

For the Matting of the Yard.

Take a pint of *White-Wine*, boil therein a *Quarter* of *Rosh-Allum*, and with a *Squirt* thrust it up very far into his *Yard*, squirt the same three or four times, to pierce and cleanse the bottom from the *Filth*; and thus continue until he be whole.

For the Tetter.

Before you meddle with the place, first draw *Blood* from his *Legs*, and then strike the *Veins* of his *Legs* on the outside and on the inside, but not on the place where the *Hooft* comes forth: then wash the place with *White-Wine*, and mingle the *Juice* of *Prunella* with *Powder* of *Galls* and clear *Water*, and with this *Liquor* beat the *Hog-grease* and *Liquid Pitch*, that all become like *Honey*; and having so done, anoint the *Tetter*, and in six times dressing this will be a present help.

How to remedy the Wind-gall.

Canterize or burn them five times with a large hot *Iron* on both sides, and then open them overthwart only once: but if there be occasion to use it under the *Knee* on the forepart of the *Leg*, then you may cure it as they do other *Burns*.

An excellent and speedy Help for the Glanders.

First, you must take one ounce of *Fenugreek*, boil it in *Water* till it split and open in two, and after that mangle it with the *Decoction*, and two pound of *Wheat-Meal*, and give it the *Horse* to drink twice a day; keep him fasting. *Prob. est.*

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 113

An excellent Remedy for the Ham in the Eye.

First, take up the *Ham* with a little Ivory Needle or pen-knife, and then cut it all away with your Scissers; for the way to cure it, is to cut it out.

A rare Medicine for a sore Back, be it never so wrung with a Saddle.

Take of *Sheeps-dung* to the quantity of three parts of your Plaister, and the fourth part of *Dry Wheat and Rye-Flower*, and mingle them well together, and let them boil a quarter of an hour in good fair Water; and then lay it on warm, and at two or three times applying it will cure the Back. This is a tryed and approved Plaister.

An excellent Cure for the Scab and the sore Crupper.

You are to take a little *Frankincense*, *Nitre*, *Tartar*, and the *Bark of Ash*, *Kiwiel*, *Verdegresse*, and *Helebore white and black*, *Round Birthwort*, and stamp them altogether with Yolks of Eggs and ordinary Ale; then after that boil them, and anoint the sore place.

For the Roating of the Yard.

The Cure is, To wash the same with warm *White-Wine*, and anoint it with the *Oyl of Roses* and *Honey* mingled together; then put it up, and with a Codpice or Truss keep it up still, and dress him every day once till he be whole.

For the swelling of the Cods or Stones.

The Cure is, To let him Blood on both sides in the Flank-Veins, then take of *Oyl of Roses* and *Vinegar*, of each a pint, half a quartern of *Bole Armony* beaten into Powder, mingle them together, and being lukewarm, anoint the Cods therewith with two or three Feathers, and the next day ride him into the Water, and give him two or three turns, then bring him to the Stable, and when that he is dry anoint them again, and so continue until that he be whole, but if the Cods do swell through any Hurt, then cover them with a Charge of *Bole-Armony* and *Vinegar* wrought together, renewing till the swelling

144 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey

go away, and if it will then break, then tent it with *Mel-rofarum*, till it be whole.

For a bony Excreffion arising upon any Member of a Horse.

Take the Root of *Elegampne* well cleansed, and wrap it in a Paper and rost it, as you would rost a Warden, in hot Embers, as hot as the Horse can suffer it (for you must not scald him;) after you have rubbed and chafed the Exereffion, clap this thereunto, and bind it on hard, and in once or twice dressing it will consume the Excreffion; also in a Morning and Evening you must rub the Excreffion with the Oyl of *Origanum*, which will consume away the Hardness.

To cure the running Frush, or any Impostumation of the Sole of the Foot; to dry Scratches, Pains, and such Ulcerous Sores.

Take old *Urine*, and burn it with good store of *Allum*, and keep it in a close Vessel by it self; then take a good handful or two of green Nettles, strong and keen, and spread them on some Plate, or other Vessel, and dry them either before the Fire, or in an Oven (after the Household Bread is drawn) then crush and bruise them into a very fine Powder, and look what a quantity of Powder there is, and take the like quantity of Pepper beaten also into a very fine Powder, and mix both very well together; then keep this Powder in a close Bladder, and when you have occasion to use it, first wash the sore place with the *Urine* and *Allum*, made very warm, and the Sore thoroughly scowred; after dry them with a very fine Linnen Cloth; and lastly, strew the Pounce of the Powder, so as that it cover all the Sore. And thus always do after Travel, or once a day in the time of Rest.

For Incording or Bursing.

This is, when the Rim that incloseth the Guts is broken, so that they fall into the Cods of the Horse, which is apparent to the sight and feeling: The Cure is, to put four Pasterns on his Feet, as the Horse-gelders use, then bathe his Stones with warm Water and Butter, then raise them

them up from the Body with both your hands, being closed by the Fingers fast together; and so holding the Stones in your hands, work down the Gut into the Body of the Horse, by stroking it downwards with your Thumbs, one after another, until that side of the Stone be so small as the other; when having returned the Gut into its right place, take a Woollen List of two fingers broad, thoroughly anointed with fresh Butter, and tie his Stones both together, or so nigh his Body as may be, not over hard; but that you may put your finger betwixt; that done, in all Quietness take the Horse away, and let him not be stirred three Weeks after, but the next day unloosen the List, and take it away, and every day after, twice or thrice a day, cast cold Water upon his Cods, to make him shrink up his Stones, and at three Weeks or a Months end, to geld him of that Stone; which done, let him eat little, and continually drink Water, but a little at a time, till three Weeks be ended.

For the Bitch in the Groins of a Horse.
The Cure is, To take of *Wheat-flower*, *Turpentine*, and *Honey*, of each a like quantity, stirring it to make a little Mixture, lay it to the Sore to break it, and then lance it, and tent it with *Turpentine* and *Hogs-grease* as before.

All these Infirmities are cured by this following Medicine: All Head-ach, all Frenzies, the Lethargy, the Staggers, the Palsey, all Colds, all Coughs, wet or dry, all Shortness of Breath, Broken-winded, Rotten Lungs, the Glanders, the Mourning of the Chine, the Lux or Loosness, the Bloody Flux.

For any Diseases of the Head, or Lungs, or other parts of them offended, you shall in any wise first let the Horse bleed in the Neck Vein, and let him bleed much, that is to say, until you see the Blood change, and that the Corruption comes to Purity; then stanch the Vein and take of *Assafetida* as much as a Hazel-Nut, dissolve it in a Sower of strong *Wine-Kinogae*, and then take fine *Flax-burds* and dip them therein, then stop the same hard unto the Horse's Ears, and with a Needle and Thread stitch the Horse's Ears together to keep the Medicine in from shaking out; and take of the white cancerous Moss which grows upon

an old Oak-Pail, or other Oaken Wood, a good handfull or more, and boill it in a Pottle of new Milk with a Root or two of *Elecampane*, till one half be consumed; then strain it, and prels the Moss exceedingly; it being luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink fasting in the Morning, and ride or walk him an hour after it gently; then set him up very warm, and having stood an hour, offer him Meat which he will willingly accept, and eat heartily, and in any case sprinkle his Hay with Water. But if you shall perceive that he casteth foul and filthy Matter at his Nostrils, then you shall every Morning as soon as you have given him the Drench, take of *Auripigmentum*, two drams of *Tussilage* or *Colesfoot*, made it into Powder, as much then with *Turpentine* work them to a stiff Paste, and make little round Cakes or Troches thereof, of the compass of a Groat, but much thicker, dry them a little, then set a Chafingdish on the Coles, and laying one or two of these Cakes thereon, cover them with a Tunnel, such as you tun Wine or Beer into Bottles with, that the Smoak may ascend through the same; and having made the Horse's head fast, put the Smoak to his Nostrils, and perfume him well with the same; and though at the first he be somewhat coy to take Smoak, yet having once felt the Smell thereof, he will take such delight therein, that he will of his own Accord thrust his Nose to the same. As soon as you have perfumed your Horse, you shall ride him forth till he begin to sweat, then set him in the Stable, and do as aforesaid; and let him not for a great while drink any cold Water either in his Sicknels or out of his Sicknels, but when you ride him after it; but if your Occasions will not permit you to do so, then you shall heat a Bottle of Water on the Fire scalding hot, and put it into a Gallon or two of cold Water, so that it may only take the Coldness away; then cast a handfull or two of Ground-Malt, or Wheat Bran into the same, and so give it the Horse to drink.

For surfeiting with Provender.

When a Horse hath eaten more than the Stomach can well digest, he is in such pain, that he is not able to stand,

lieth and walloweth, as if he had the Bots. The Cure is, to let him blood, and to draw his Yard and wash it; put a piece of a Clove of Garlick into it to make him; also to rake him behind, and to give him a Glisten.

For the Navel-Gall.

The Cure is, Take *Soot* of a Chimney and *Teast* mixed together, and Plaister it once or twice a day.

Another Remedy for the same.

If it be sore, Take a Pottle of *Verjuice*, three pennyworth of *Green Coperas*, boil it to the one half, and wash the Sore therewith, then fill the Sore with *Red-lead*, and let it not be dressed again in three days; then you may dress him as you shall see cause.

Another Cure for the same.

If it be inflamed, cut it round about with a sharp Knife, even to the Bone, leaving no rotten Flesh behind; then take the *White of an Egg* and Salt beaten together, and lay upon Tow, Plaisterwise, renewing it so for two days together; then take a quarter of a pint of *Honey*, and an ounce of *Verdegrease*, beaten into a Powder, and boyl them together, stirring them till it look red; and being warm, make a Plaister thereof with Tow, and wash the sore with *Vinagar* or *White-Wine*, and lay that Plaister on it; and when it begins to heal, scatter the Powder of burnt *yster-shells* on it, or else the Powder of *Honey and Slack'd lime*, being made in a Cake and bak'd, to dry it up.

For the sweying of the Back.

The Hurt cometh by some Strain. The Cure is, That as soon as he beginneth to complain, which is by reeling or bowling in the hinder Parts, which is easily discerned, then take a *Sheeps-skin* as hot as it can be taken from the sheep, and clap the fleshy side along his Back, and presently put many Cloths upon it to keep his Back as warm as may be, and so let him continue till it begin to smell, then prepare another in like manner, and take away the old,

118 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey

old, and so continue him for twenty one days at least; and let him not be travell'd, but still rest. And if this help him not, then draw his Back with a hot Iron right out, on both sides of the Edge of his Back, from the pitch of the Buttock, to a handful within the Saddle, and then overthwart; and let not the Strokes be deep, but so burned that they may look yellow; then presently lay on this Charge. Of Pitch a pound, of Rosin half a pound, of Bole Arm half a pound, made in Powder, and half a pint of Tar, and boyl them together in a pot, until they be thoroughly mingled; then being lukewarm, daub it very thick upon the Burning and clap as many Flocks, of the Horse's Colour, as you can make to abide and let them remain till they fall off.

Of the Guarded or foul swelled Legs, or other Parts, by reason of the melting of the Gases, or other Accidents.

First, with the Fleam, rick the Parts that are swelled, then take a pint of Wine-Les, of Gummin-seeds, and a handful of Wheat-flower, and boil them together till they are thick, then apply this Poultice very hot to the swelled parts, renewing it but once in 24 hours; then if this, in two or three times, draw it to a head, lance it and heal it, either with a Plaister of Slicemakers-wax, or else with the Talcum in Egg, Wheat-flower and Honey beaten all to a Salve. If it do not draw to any Head, and yet the swelling continue, then take of Bitch a quarter of a pound, and as much of Virgin-wax, of Rosin half a pound, of the Juice of Hellebore half an ounce, of Beets-Salt half a pound, of Populeon half an ounce, of the drops of Storax half an ounce, and boyl them all together in an Earthen pot; and after it is cold, take of Brimstone half a pound, of Armoniack an ounce and half, of Costus as much, beat these into a fine Powder, and then incorporate them with the other, and boyl them over again very well; which done, pour the whole Mixture into cold Water, then roll it in seven big Rolls, and dry it otherwise; afterwards spread this Plaister upon a piece of Leather, and fold it about the swelled Member, or lay it upon the swelled part; and if any thing will do it, it will assuage it, and afford much Strength to the Sinews.

You shall by no means remove this Plaister, as long as it will stick on. This Plaister, I must confess, is costly, and curious to make; but that Horse that hath it applied to his Limbs when he cometh from Travel, shall never be troubled with swelled Legs, or ever throw out Wind-galls: but if you will not be at such Cost, then continually both before and after the travel of your Horse, when he is in the House, several times in a day, lave and wash his Limbs or other Swelled parts, with the coldest and clearest Fountain Water that you can get, and sometimes let the Horse stand in some cold clear River for the space of a quarter of an hour, or more, up to the Knees, and Linterels, but no farther. This Medicine, how poorly soever you may look on it, is of infinite Vertue; and though I write of cold Water, yet is the Operation hot and fiery; only this you must take to your Remembrance, that this Application appertains not to Impostumations, but to Strains and Swellings, which are without much Anguish.

How to keep a Horse or a Fale from Tying.

If you ride on a tying Jade, and fear the perplexed Cruelty of this lazy Beast, then be sure to carry about you, the fine searse Powder of *Elecampane*, and when others bait their Horses, or that you come to the place of Bait for your Horse, the first thing you are to do, is, to let him up warm, and do not walk him. After he hath been well rubbed, take a quart of strong Ale, and put thereunto half an ounce of the Powder of *Elecampane*, and brew them together, then give it the Horse with a Horn; which done, tie his head to the Rack, for you need not care for Provender till Night, at which time Provender him well, and in the Morning give him Oats, or Bread, or both, in plentiful manner; and being ready to back him, give him the former quantity of Ale, and the Powder aforesaid, and doubtless you shall find him to travel with great Confidence and Spirit. Also, take a bunch of *Penny-Royal*, and lay it to the Mouth of your Bit, or Snaffle, and you shall find it very comfortable to him. Now if your Horse, notwithstanding all this, do happen to tire, then you shall take

off the Saddle, and with the Herd called *Arsmart*, rub his Back very hard, then laying *Arsmart* also under the Saddle, so ride him; and if there be any Life in him, it will make him go, for this is a notable Torment, and the Smart is almost intolerable.

Two sorts of Balls to cure any violent Cough, or Glander, to prevent the Hearts sickness, to purge away all molten Grease, to recover a lost Stomach, to keep the Heart from fainting with Exercise, and to make a lean Horse to be suddenly fat.

Take of *Aniseeds*, of *Cummin-seeds*, of *Fenugreek-seeds*, of *Catbanus-seeds*, of the Powder of *Elecampane-Roots*, two ounces, beat them and searse them to a very fine Powder, then add to them an ounce of the *Flower of Brimstone*, and take an ounce of the best *Juice of Liquorice*, and dissolve it in half a pint of *White-wine*; which done, take an ounce of the *Oyl of Aniseeds*, and as much of the *Syrup of Coltsfoot* and of *Sallet-Oyl*, and of fine *Life-honey* a pint, then mix all this with the former Powder, and with as much fine *VVheat-flower* as will bind them together, then work them into a stiff Paste, and make thereof Balls somewhat bigger than *French Walnuts*, and to keep them in a close Gallipot, for they will last all the Year; and when you have occasion to use it, take one and anoint it all over with *Sweet-Butter*, and so give the Horse every Morning one, in the manner of a Pill, and ride him a little after it, then feed or water him abroad or at home, according to your usual Custom; and thus do (if it be to prevent Sickness) for three or four Mornings together; but if it be only to take away an Infirmary, then use it at least a Week or more; if it be to take away molten Grease or Foulness, then instantly after his Heat, or in his Heat only; but if it be to fatten a Horse, then use it at the least a Fortnight, or more. Now if you find any difficulty of the giving of it as Pills, you may then at your Pleasure dissolve one of those Balls either into *Sweet-Wine*, *Beer*, or *Ale*, and so give it the Horse to drink with a Horn. But if it be to fatten, and take away Infirmary, as, the running *Glanders*, or such like, then besides these Balls, you may make these second Balls. Take

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 121

of *Wheat-flower* six pound, or more, as shall suffice to make stiff the Paste, then take of *Aniseeds*, of *Cummin-seeds*, and of *Cathanus*, of *Fenugreek*, and ordinary *Brimstone*, of each two ounces, *Sallet-Oil* a pint, of *Honey*, of *White-wine* a Pottle, beat those hard Simples to a fine Powder, and searse them, then with the rest make them into a stiff Paste : then of this Paste take a Ball as big as a Man's Fist, and dissolve it into two or three Gallons of clear cold running Water, by washing and laying the Paste therein, and so give it the Horse to drink at the ordinary watering times, or any other times when he is disposed to drink, which can't be too often ; then ride and warm him a little after it : then when the Water is spent, do not cast away the Bottom, but filling up the Vessel again with new fresh Water, dissolve another Ball therein ; and thus do for fourteen days together at least, and you shall see wonderful Effects arise. This Water scowreth, cleanseth, and feedeth in an admirable manner. And the other lesser Balls first spoken of, purge the Stomach or Intrails of all Foulness, void molten Grease, fortifie nature so powerfully, that it leaves behind it no evil in the Body. And this small Ball (if it were for my Life) would I give to a Horse immediately upon his drawing forth, if he went either to run, to hunt, to use any violent and extreme Labour.

Another way how to fatten a Horse suddenly.

There is another way to fatten a Horse suddenly, which I have found to be both good and certain. Take of *Elecampane*, of *Cummin-seeds*, of *Turmerick*, of *Aniseeds*, of each two ounces, of *Groundsil* an handful, boyl all these very well with three Heads of *Garlick*, cleansed and stamped in a Gallon of strong Ale, then strain it well, and give the Horse a quart to drink lukewarm in the Morning fasting, then ride him that he be warm, set him up warm, and thus do for four or five Mornings, and then turn the Horse to Grass (if the time of the Year be suitable thereunto) and he will feed heartily. But if the time of the Year serve not for Grass, then you must keep him in the House, and over and beside the drink before shewed, you shall take

122 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

fine Powder of *Elecampane*, and the fine Powder of *Cummin-seeds*, a like quantity, mix them well together, then every time you give your Horses Provender, which should be at least thrice a day, in the Morning, Noon, and at Night, take half an ounce of this Powder, and sprinkle it by little and little into his Provender, for fear of Offence, till it be all eaten up. And thus do for fourteen days together at the least, and you shall see the Horse prosper in a wonderful and strange manner.

For the Hide-bound.

The Cause hereof is sudden Cold after great Heat; when the Pores are open the Cold entereth, and maketh an Attraction of the Sinews, so as the Horse seemeth to go or Travel with great Grief, his Skin being as if it were starched, being shrunk and clinging to his Ribs. The Cure is, to let him Blood in both the Flank-Veins, being next the girding place and the Flanks: then take a quart of good *White-Wine*, and put thereunto three ounces of *Sallet-Oyl*, and of *Cummin*, one ounce, of *Aniseeds* two ounces, of *Liquorice*, two ounces beaten into a Powder, and give it him warm, then let him be rubbed half an hour together; cover all his Back with a Sack, thoroughly soak'd in a Tub of Water, and the Water wrung out of it, and upon that cast many Cloths, and gird them fast unto him to bring him to a Sweat, which is the only and chief thing to recover him, and keep him good Mashcs, and every day let him be so used; for seven or eight days together, give him much sodden Barly and Beans for his dyet, and green Malt on the floor, and after the eight days let him Blood in the two breast Veins, about a pint; then give him a pint of Sack, and quarter of a pint of *Sallet-Oyl*, four penniworth of the best Treacle, and ride him until he sweat, then presently set him in a warm Stable, and cloth him very warm, and at Night give him a good Mash of Malt, with the Powder of *Brimstone* to the quantity of two spoonfulls.

For the Navel-gall.

The Cures thereof are divers, and so they ought to be; for Medicine is to be ministred according to the hurt, as it may

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 123

may be more or less. If it be but galled, take Soot of a Chimney and ~~Yeast~~ mixed together, and Plaister it once or twice a day.

Another Remedy for the same Sore.

Take a Pottle of *Verjuice*, three penniworth of *Greese Coporas*, boil it to the one half, and wash the Sore therewith, then fill it with red Lead, and let it not be dressed of three days, then dress it as you shall see cause.

Another Cure for the same.

If it be so hurt as that it swell and is imposthumed, then lance it on the nethermost part of the *Ulcer*, so that the matter may have issue downward, for if you should lance it aloft, then the Corruption that remaineth will fistulate; if you find the Concavity deep, then make a Tent of *Flax*, and dip it in this Salve. Take of *Deers-Suet*, of *Wax*, of *Tar*, and of *Turpentine*, of each three ounces, and one ounce of *Rosin*, mingle them together, and tent the Wound; and if you see any dead Flesh grow in it, then sprinkle the Powder of *Verdegrease* upon it, lay upon the Head of the Tent a Plaister of a Yolk of an Egg, *Honey*, and *Wheat-flower*, and thus dress it Evening and Morning until it be whole.

For the Worms.

They are ingendred of raw and evil Humours: there are three kinds of them; the Worm, the Bot, and the Trenchon. The Horse will lie down and wallow when they feed on him, his breath will stink, and his Mouth be clammy. The cure is for to give him a quart of new Milk, and half a pint of *Honey* in it Blood-warm; this will make them rest from gnawing of him, because they will suck thereof until they are ready for to burst; then the next day give him this drink following. First take a quart of wort, or of the strongest Ale, then take a quarter of a pound of *Fenn*, half a pound of *Savin*, half a pound of *Stonecrop*, stamp them, and put them together with two spoonfuls of *Brimstone*, and as much Chimney Soot beaten to Powder, and let them lye in steep two hours, then strain them and

124 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

give the Horse a little warm; bridle him and let him stand six hours after without Meat, and there is no doubt but the Horse will be quiet, for the strength thereof is such to strain the Maw, as that the Bot will not meddle, but fly from it, but it doth not kill them. After these former Drinks given him, the third day make him purging Pills, viz. Take of *Lard* a pound, laid in Water two hours, take nothing but the clean Fat thereof; stamp it in a Mortar, and thereunto put of *Liquorice*, of *Aniseeds*, of *Fennigreek*, of each beaten into Powder three ounces; of *Aloes* in Powder two ounces; and of *Agarick* an ounce, knead them into a Paste, and make six balls thereof, then the Horse having fasted over night, give him the next Morning three of these Pills, anointed with *Honey*; when you have opened his Mouth, catch hold of his Tongue, hold it fast till you have hurled in one, and thrust it down his Throat with a rolling-pin, and then let his Tongue go till he hath swallowed it down, and so do with the rest, and keep him close from all Air, and at Night give him a strong Mash, and warm Water three days after; my reason is, for that these Balls will purge out of his Body all the Bots and Worms, and all the Humours that breed and cherish them; so as that your Horse will be perfectly clean: and you shall find most of the Bots alive, when they are purged; for you cannot kill them with Medicine, but only make them to forbear vexing of him; for so long as his Maw resteth so bitter and stinking, they dare not feed on it, but upon other Humours.

For the Lax.

Take of *Bean-flower* and *Bole Armony*, of each a quatern, mingled in a quart of red Wine, give it him lukewarm, and after it let him drink warm Water, with *Bean-flower*, but if that will not stay him, then give him half a penny-worth of *Allum*, beaten into Powder, and *Bole Armony* beaten small, in a quart of Milk, stirring them till the Milk be all of a Curd, and this will stop him.

For Costiveness or Belly-bound.

Take of the Decoction of *Mallows* a quart, put it to
half

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 125

half a pint of Oil, or so much Butter, an ounce of *Benedick Luxature*, and pour it into his Fundament with a little Horn, and hold his Tail close to his Fundament, whilst another doth lead him, and so keep it in him as long as you can, and after keep him warm and give him warm Water to drink.

All these Infirmities are cured by the Whey only contained in this following Medicine: The Bloody-Rifis, the Bladders, the Lampus, all Mouth-Cankers, all Humors in the Mouth, The Tongue-burt, the Paps, the Tooth-ach, the Shedding of Hair, the Fester-waxins.

Take of New-Milk three quarts, a good handful of *Plantain*, let it boil till a full pint be consumed; then take six ounces of *Allum*, and an ounce and a half of *White-Sugar*, both being made in a very fine Powder, six spoonfuls of strong Wine-Vinegar, and put them into the Milk; then let it boil a little till it have a hard Curd, then drain it, and save the Whey wherewith you shall first bathe the Sore; the Whey being warm, then with a clean Cloth dry the Sore, and apply this Salve to it: Take of *Turpentine*, *Yellow-wax*, and *Hags-grease* ground to a fine Powder, an ounce and a half; mix all these together on a soft Fire, and then put it in a Gally-pot, and let it cool; but in case where the Bruise is not broken, nor is likely to break, you must apply another Medicine, which I shall hereafter acquaint you with.

For the Yellows.

The Cause hereof is also the abundance of bad Humors; the Cure is plain, let him Blood, if you see it yellow, a Pottle, then give him a quart of *White-Wine*, of *Saffron* and *Fenugreek* of each half an ounce, and the juice that is wrung out of two handfuls of *Selandine*, and being Blood-warm, give it him, and keep him warm, and with good Masses, wherein put two spoonfuls of the Powder of *Brimstone*; some will give in this drink the green ordure of Geese strained.

126 The Gentleman's Complent Jockey.

For the Surfeiting and Foundring of the Body.

The Cause of this Disease is over-much eating after Labour, whilst the Horse is hot, whereby his meat not being digested, breedeth evil Humors, which by little and little do spread through all the parts of the Body, and at length oppress the whole Body; and so do take away his Strength that he hath not power to go or move his Joints; and being laid is not able to rise, whereby he wanteth the use of pissing, as also of dunging; Nature being overcome, then doth the Humour rule the body to the destruction of it: In like manner it is when the Horse being over hot with Travel drinketh so much as the Cold thereof suppresseth his natural Heat: the Cause is, that the evil Humours being predominant according to their Nature, being heavy and moist, immediately fall down into the Horse's Legs and Feet, and there rest, which if not prevented will make great gordy Limbs, as the Pains, Cratches, Spavins, Windgalls, casting of the Hoofs, and such like. The Cure hereof must be according to your Effects that are wrought in the Horse, if it be perceived, as when the Hair beginneth to stare, that he will be chill, and shrug for Cold, forsake his Meat, hang down his Head, quiver after cold Water, and after two or three days, begin to cough, which is a sign that his surfeit is not great, and that he may be thus cured; Cover his Belly with the Glister last mentioned, and give him this Drink: Take of *Malmsey* a quart, of *Sugar* half a quatern, of *Cinamon* half an ounce, of *Liquorice* and *Aniseeds*, of each two spoonfuls beaten into fine Powder, put into it *Malmsey*, and give it him Blood-warm, keep him warm, let him drink nothing but warm water, four or five days after let him Blood.

For the Collick.

The Cause of this Disease is twofold; either it proceeds from abundance of Humours, or of Wind; and although it be Wind, yet I judge the Original to be an Obstruction of Humours which will not suffer the Wind to have its free passage, which otherwise Nature would expel as his Enemy.

The

The Cures may be divers, and because it is a Disease that few Farriers understand, I will set down several Cures, that if one thing cannot be speedily procured, another may. First, it may be an Obstruction, for that the Horse hath the stone, and cannot stale: for this take a quart of White-Wine, half a pint of *Bur-seed* beaten small, two ounces of *Parfly-seed*, of *Smallage*, *Saxafrage*, the Roots of *Philapendula*, *Gromwel-seed*, and *Broom-seed*, of each two ounces, beaten to fine Powder, a good handful of *Water-Cresses*, and lay them in steep all Night, and in the Morning strain them clean, and put into it a little *Black-Soap*, and a little *Bur-ur*, and ride him until that he begin to sweat; then set him in a Stable with a great quantity of sweet Litter under him, and cloath him warm, and so let him stand Meatless seven or eight hours; then give him dried Oats and warm Water, with a quantity of *Sallet-Oyl* to drink; and before he have this Drink let him fast all Night.

Another Cure for the same.

Take a pound of *Malmsey*, of *Cloves*, *Pepper*, *Cinamon*, of each an ounce, of *Sugar* half a quartern, and give it the Horse lukewarm, and Labour him upon it an hour that be dung and stale, keep him to warm Water; but if he be a stoned Horse, there is not any better thing than for him to have his full desire with a Mare.

Another for the same.

If you think that it proceeds chiefly from Wind, it may be so occasioned when he is ridden hot and set up cold; he will pine away, and forsake his Meat; keep him empty all Night, in the Morning take a quart of *White-Wine*, four ounces of *Fenugreek*, seven ounces of *Bayes*, as much *Coriander*, *Pepper*, an ounce of *Grains*, an ounce of *Ginger*, two handfuls of *Water-Cresses*, a handful of *Sage*, a pound of *Sea-green*, and wring out the Juice; Another of *Mints*, stamp them and put them into a pint of *White-Wine*, and let them stand on the fire till they boyl, strain them out, and give it him Blood-warm with a little *Honey*.

For Surfeiting with Provender.

When a Horse hath eaten more than his stomach can well digest, he is in such pain, as that he is not able to stand, but lyeth and walloweth as if he had the Bots, the danger whereof I have written. The Cure is, to let him Blood, and to draw his Yard, and wash it, put a piece of a Clove of *Garlick* into it, to make him piss; also to rake him behind, and give him a glister with the Water of *Sodden-Mallows*, *Fresh-Butter* and *Sallet-Oyl*; keep him harm, and let him eat very little for four or five days.

These Infirmities are cured by the following Medicine: All Convulsion of Sinews, all Cramps whatsoever, your Neck-crick, the Shoulder-Splat, all swelled Legs, the Over-reach of the Back-Sinew, all Wind-Galls, Wrenches in the nether Joints, all Bruises unbroke, all Strains whatsoever.

Take strong *Vinegar* or *Patch-grease*, or *Pease-grease*, of each a like quantity, and boyl it on the Fire; then with *Wheat-Bran* make it into a hot Poultis; and being so warm as the Horse may endure it, apply it twice a day to the grieved place; but in case that the soreness be where you cannot bind any Poultis unto it, then you shall only take *Patch-grease*, and being molten very hot, with the same bathe the Horse twice a day, and give him very moderate Exercise before and after his dressing; it will not only take away all Pain and Anguish, but also remove all Swellings, Guordings, or any other Sore whatsoever.

For the Wens or Knobs in the Body.

The Cure is, Take of *Mallows*, *Sage*, and *Red-Nettles*, of each a handful, boyl them in running Water, put thereunto *Butter* and *Honey* a little quantity, and when that the Herbs are soft, bruise them, then put thereunto of *Oyl of Bayes* two ounces, and two ounces of *Hogs-grease*, and warm them together over the Fire; which being well stirred and very hot, make a Plaister as big as the Wen, upon a piece of Leather, and so renew it for the space of eight days, always laid as hot as may be; and if it come not to a head then lance it very deep, afterwards heal it with
very

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 129

very clean, washed *Turpentine*, the *Tolk of an Egg*, and a little *Saffron*, well wrought together, with a Tent of *Flax*, well rowled therein, renewing it every day.

Another Cure for the same.

Take a pound of strong *Lye* and *Soap*, a quarter of *Vi-triol Roman*, an ounce of *Sal Armoniack*, as much of *Rock-Allum*, and boil them together till they are thick, and use it for an Ointment.

Another remedy for the same.

Take *Gipsiacum*, the strongest, and lay it on with *Cotton* three or four times, and it will take it away.

For the falling of the Crest.

The Cure is, First let the Crest be supported to stand upright; then on the contrary side that it falleth; draw tis Crest the depth of a Straw with a hot Iron, the edge of which Iron should be half an Inch broad, and make your Beginning and Ending somewhat beyond the Fall; but the first Draught must go all the way upon the edge of the Main, even under the Roots of the same, bearing your hand right downward into the neckward, then answer that with another Draught beneath, and so far distant from the first as the Fall is broad, compassing all the Fall; and betwixt these two Draughts, right in the midst, draw another Draught, then with a Button of an Inch about, or else crossing the same with your Iron, burn at each end a hole, or else cross the Spaces betwixt the Draughts; the Reason is, that by the purring up and shrinking of the Skin on the contrary side, the Crest may stand upright: Some will afterwards anoint the same with Fresh Butter, or something to assuage the Heat; but this is a way to enlarge the Skin, and for my own part I hold it best until nine days are past, then to take away the Scab will not be amiss.

For the crick in the Neck.

There are many Opinions how this should come to a Horse, and therefore many means ought to be used before

130 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

any extreme means be used; first therefore, if the Horse have such a Crick that he holdeth his Neck streight, and cannot have the use to lift it up and down as was usual, then let two Men on each side rub his Neck, rub him stoutly; sparing no pains till his Neck be grown very hot; which being done, put a Bit into his Mouth, and make tryal if he can or will rein in any seemly Proportion; the which if he do, then it is to be concluded the same came by some Cold or some Strain; and then I would have him let blood on both of the Breast-Veins, and all his Neck thoroughly anointed and laboured with *Aquavita* and *Nerve-Oil*, that it may drink into the Skin, and two Sheep-skins wrapt about him with the Wool next to the Neck to keep it in a great Heat, and so to rest twenty-four hours; and if he do not by this means amend, but carrieth his Head still down and feedeth slowly, then make a hole in his Forehead close under the Foretop, and thrust in a Cronet to raise the Skin from the Flesh a handfull deep, then take a Goose's Feather well anointed with *Hogs-grease* to keep the hole open that it may run ten days together, and every day twice let the Feather be cleansed and new anointed, and let his Neck be still laboured with rubbing, covered very warm to keep it in a Sweat, and if you perceive no Amendment, then draw him with a hot Iron from the Root of the Ear on both sides of the Neck through the midst of the same, even to the Breast, a straw deep, that both ends may meet on the Breast; but if he carry his Neck awry on one side, then only draw the contrary side with a hot Iron, and fail not every Morning when he is fasting to ride him with a Bit till he sweat, and the hotter he is, the more pull in his Rein; and when he cometh to the Stable, cool him moderately, and rub him thoroughly.

To draw the Wolves Teeth.

These are two little Teeth growing in the upper Jaw next to the great grinding Teeth, which hinderr the Horse from grinding his Meat, so as he will let it fall unchewed, and sometimes you shall see some Teeth so long and overhanging in his Jaws, that they race and cut his Cheeks, so
that

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 121

that he cannot feed. The Cure is, Tye the Horse's Head to some Rafter or Post, his Mouth being opened with a Cord, so as you may see every part thereof, then take a round Iron Tool half a yard long, made at the end like a Carpenter's Gouge, and with your Left-hand set the edge of that Tool at the foot of the Wolves Teeth, on the outside of the Jaw, turning the hollow-side of the Tool downward, holding your hand steadily, then with a Mallet in your Right-hand strike on the head of the Tool, a pretty hard blow to loosen it, and make it bend inward, then wrench the Tooth outward with the inside of the Tool, and thrust it out of his Head; and do the like to the other Tooth, and fill the holes with Salt; and if any Tooth do over-hang the nether Teeth, to the Prejudice of the Horse, then with your Mallet and Tool pare the Tooth, or as many as over-hang for hurting the Horse's Mouth.

For the swelling of the Gums.

The Cure is, To make him to bleed well in the Pallate of the Mouth, and also to scarifie the Gums that the rank Blood may come out, and then rub them thoroughly with Vinegar and Salt.

Of the Rists, or Corruption in the Pallate of the Mouth.

Take sharp Vinegar and Salt and wash the same, and then anoint it with Honey. For the Lampus or Hadders in a Horses Mouth, every Farrier can cure it.

For the Cumey in the Mouth.

This proceeds from the eating of filthy Hay, that Cats, Dogs, and other Vermine have pist upon, which will cause the Horses mouth to be furred or clammy, so that he will not eat. The Cure is, to let him blood in two great Veins under the Tongue, and to wash his mouth with Vinegar and Salt, and to give him new Bread that is not hot.

For the Heat in the Mouth.

Turn up the upper Lip and jag it with a Lancet, that it may bleed, and wash it with Vinegar and Salt.

132 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

For the Canker in the Mouth.

Wash the fore place with strong Vinegar, made thick with the Powder of *Allum*, two or three days together, to destroy the exulcerate matter ; then take a quart of fair *Water*, of *Allum* four ounces, of *Honey* four or five Spoonfuls, of *Maudlin* Leafes, *Sage* Leafes, and *Columbine* Leafes, of each a handful ; boil all these together till half be consumed, and then every day being warmed, wash the same two or three times a day, and it will heal it.

For the Barbels or Paps under the Tongue.

The Cure is, to clip them away, and to wash them with Vinegar and Salt,

For the Hurt of the Tongue with a Bit.

The Cure is, To wash it with *Allum-water*, then take *Black Bramble* Leafes, and chop them with *Fard*, and put them within a Clout, and make them as round as a Ball ; then dip the same in *Honey*, and anoint the Tongue therewith until it be whole.

For the Giggs in the Mouth.

They are Swellings with black Heads, growing in the inside of the Lip. The Cure is, to slit them and thrust out the Corruption, and to wash the same with Vinegar and Salt.

These Infirmities are cured by the Medicine following : Manginess in the Main, Manginess in the Tail, the Mallander, the Sellander, the Pains, the Scratches, all kided Heels. The Leprosie, the Farcyn, the General Scab, all Lice or Nits, or other Vermin.

First, in any wise you shall let the Horse blood in the Neck-Vein, and suffer him to bleed very well (because the Corruption of the Blood is the only Breeder of these Infirmities) having with a Knife, Lascet, Curry-comb, Hair-cloth, and such like, opened the Knots and Pistules, and rubbed away all Scurf and Filthiness, laying the Sores open

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 133

open and raw, as it were ready to bleed ; then you shall take of *Yellow Arsnick* or *White Mercury* beaten to a fine Powder, or *Belagar* and clarified *Hogs-grease*, of each a like quantity, and beat them well together till they come to a perfect Ointment ; then having tied the Horse's Head up fast to the Rack, in such wise that he can neither lick nor bite himself, with this Ointment anoint all the Sores and other offended places very well over, holding some hot Bar of Iron, or Fire-shovel, heated against the same, that the Ointment may the better and speedier soak in ; and being thus anointed, let him stand the space of two or three hours at the least tyed as aforesaid ; which done, take of the strongest Urine you can get, and with the same wash away all the Ointment, wheresoever it was laid, and then untie the Horse, and put him to his Meat ; and thus do once a day, till the Sores dry up and begin to waste away.

For the Bleeding at the Nose.

This may be derived from many Causes which cannot be truly known, as proceeding from within the Body, and therefore I shall only direct how to cure the same. Take a pint of *Red-Wine*, and put thereinto a quarter of *Bala-Armony* beaten into a fine Powder, and put the one half into his Nostrils that bleedeth, holding up his Head, and this may do well if in the Nostril or Head there be the original Cause ; the next day give him the rest into his body, and that will surely bind his Body, and it may help the bleeding inward.

Another Remedy for the same.

Let him blood in the Breast-Veins, of each a pint, for that is most likely to turn the Course of the Blood ; take two or three spoonfuls of his Blood, and put it into a Sawcer, and boyl it until it be dried to a powder ; then take the Powder thereof, and blow it into his Nostrils, and if it come of a Wound, put it into the same, and it will presently stanch it ; as also *Horse-dung*, *Asses-dung*, *Hogs-dung*, *Sage-Leaves* bruised and put into the Wound ; or take of *Frankincense* an ounce, of *Aloes* half an ounce,

134 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

and beat them into a fine Powder, and mingle them thoroughly with the *Whites of Eggs* until it be as thick as *Honey*, and with soft Hares-hair thrust his Nostrils so full, as that it cannot fall out. And lastly, some will throw cold Water upon him against his Hair, and 'tis likely that the over-cooling of him that way may stop the Flux thereof: And this a worthy experienced Friend of mine did use to do, if at any time such a sudden Accident did happen.

Of the Vines.

This Distemper proceedeth from the Corruption of Blood: The Cure is, Draw them with a hot Iron right-down the midst, from the Root of the Ear so far as the Tip of the Ear will reach being pulled down, and again under the Root of the Ear, with a hot Iron draw two strikes on each side like this Figure, †; then in the midst of the first line lance them with a Lancelet or Razor, taking hold of the Kernels with a pair of Pinchers, but beware that you touch them not with your bare Fingers; pull them so far out with your Pinchers as that you may cut the Kernels out without hurting the Vein; then fill the Hole full of *Salt*.

Another Cure for the same.

Take a *Egremony*, *Honey*, and *Violet-Leaves*, stamp them together, and slit the Sinew under the Ear, and lay a Plaster thereunto two or three days.

For the Canker in the Nose.

This proceeds from corrupt Blood, and consumed Flesh, which makes it raw within, and in the end will eat the Gristle thereof; it will also cause the Horse to bleed at the Nose, and to yield a filthy savour. The Cure is, take of green *Cyperas* and *Allum* of each a pound, and of white *Cyperas*, one quarter of a pound, boyl these in a Pottle of running Water until it be half consumed, then take it off, and put into it half a pint of *Honey*, hold up his Head with a staff, but not too high, and with a Squirt, squirt the Water,

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 135

ter, being lukewarm, three or four times together into his Nostrils, and give him liberty to blow out the filthy matter least you choak him; and with a Stick and a Rag wash his Nostrils twice a day until he be whole.

Another Cure for the same.

If you see the Canker be of great heat and burning in the Sore, with exceeding Pain, take the Juice of *Purslane*, *Lettice*, *Sorrel*, and *Night-shade*, and wash the Sore with a fine Clout, and with a Squirt, wash the same, and this will kill it.

For the Canker of the Eyes.

This proceeds from the Corruption of the Blood, by reason whereof you shall see many red Pimples both within and without the Eye, and through Inflammation the Eye will look red, and be full of Corruption. The Cure is, To let him Blood (on the side of the Neck that you see the Eye is grieved) a Pottle or more, if you see the Blood very foul, and the Inflammation great, then take three pints of fair Water, and Roch *Allum*, and green *Coparas*, of each half a pound, and of white *Coparas* an ounce, and boil them until half be consumed, then once a day, being made warm, with a fine Cloth cleanse the Eye, so that it look raw; and this do every day until it be whole.

For the Impostumes in the Ear.

This may proceed from some Blow or evil Humours: The Cure is, Take Powder of *Linseed*, and of *Wheat-flower*, of each half a pint, of *Hogs-grease* one pound, warm them in a pot on the fire, until they be thoroughly incorporated, by continual stirring, then take a piece of white Leather, somewhat bigger than the Impostumation, and spread it, being very warm, as far as will cover the swelling, and renew it every day until it break, then lance it, so as the Corruption may go downward, and tent it to the bottom with a full Tent of Flax, dipt with this Ointment following: Of *Melrosatum*, of Oyl of *Life* and *Turpentine*, of each two ounces, and mingle them thoroughly, then make him a
Biggin

136 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Biggin of Canvas to close in the Sore, so as the Tent and Ointment may abide within, renewing it every day once until it be whole; but if the pain be in the Ears without any great swelling, which may be only with Cold, then take Blackwood dipt in the Oyl of Camomile and thrust it in to his Ears.

These Infirmitiees are cured by this Medicine following, all Light Galls, to skin Sores, to dry up Humours.

First, bathe the Sore place with hot molten Butter; then strow upon it the Powder of Rosin for a day or two: lastly, Take a spoonful or two of very thick Cream, and with the Soot of a Chimney bring it to a very thick Paste; then spread it upon the Sore, and it will heal, dry, and Skin in a short space.

Of the Pole Evil.

This proceedeth likewise from the same Causes, and groweth like a *Fistula* betwixt the Ears or the Nape of the Neck, you shall perceive it by the swelling; if it be not broken, ripen it with a Plaister of white Hogs-grease, as tho' you would scald it therewith, and make him a Biggin to keep him very warm, and renew the Plaister twice a day very hot and it will ripen the sooner; then where it is softest, and where the Corruption may best Issue forth, with a round hot Iron as big as your little-Finger, two Inches beneath the soft place, thrust it upwards, so as the point of the Iron may come forth at the ripest place, then Tent it with Flax dipt in Hogs-grease, and lay also a Plaister of Hogs-grease on the same, renewing it four or five days; then afterwards take half a pound of Turpentine clean washed and dry'd from the Water, with two Yolks of Eggs and a little Saffron, and mingle them together; then with a Quill search the depth of the Hole, and tent it with a Sponge so big as the Hole to the bottom, and so thrust it with a Quill into the Wound to the bottom, and a warm Plaister of Hogs-grease to cover it, renewing it twice a day; but when the swelling ceaseth use no Plaister.

For Impostumes in the Ear.

This proceeds from some Blow or evil Humours. The Cure is, Take a Powder of *Linseed* and of *Wheat-flower* of each half a pint, of *Hogs-grease* one pound, warm them in a Pot on the Fire, until they be thoroughly incorporated, by continual stirring; then take a piece of white Leather, somewhat bigger than the Impostumation, and spread it, being very warm, as far as will cover the Swelling, and renew it every day until it break; then lance it, so as the Corruption may go downward, and tent it to the bottom with a full Tent of *Flax*, well dipt in the Ointment following; of *Melrosatum*, of *Oyl of Life* and *Turpentine*, of each two ounces, and mingle them thoroughly, then make him a Biggen of Canvas to close in the Sore, so as the Tent and Ointment may abide within, renewing it every day once until it be whole; but if the Pain be in the Ears, without any great swelling, which may be only with Cold, then take Black Wool dipt in the *Oyl of Camomile*, and thrust it into his Ears.

For the Canker in the Eye.

This proceeds from the Corruption of Blood, by reason whereof you shall see many red Pimples both within and without the Eye, and through Inflammation the Eye will look red, and be full of Corruption. The Cure is, to let him Blood, (on that side the Neck that you see the Eye is grieved) a Pottle or more; if you see the Blood very foul, and the Inflammation great, then take three pints of fair Water, and of *Rock-Altum* and *Green Coperas* of each half a pound, and of *White-Coperas* an ounce, and boil them until that half be consumed, then once a day being made warm, with a fine Cloth cleanse the Eye, so as it look raw; and this do every day until it be whole.

For the Haw in the Eye.

This Distemper is known unto all Farriers; no doubt but it is ingendred from some gross Humour descending out of the Head: the Cure thereof is, to pull both the Eye-Lids

Lids open with several Threads stitched with a Needle to either of the Lids, then catch hold of the Hair with the stich of another Needle and Thread, and pull it on so far as you may stay it with your Finger, to the intent it may cut all round to the breadth of a Penny, and leave the black behind, for by cutting away so much of the fat and black of the Eye, the Horse many times becomes bleer-eyed, and therefore you must spare the Fat which is the wash of the Eye, and the Film, wherein the Eye groweth, but cut between the Film, and the Crush, and then squirt in a little *White wine* or *Beer*.

For Lunatick Eyes.

For as much as they are so called, I am content so to continue the name ; and it is said that the Horse becometh blind at certain times of the Moon, and thereupon most Men do gather that his Sight is good or bad, according to the natural Course of the Moon ; but the Truth thereof is from the natural Sight of the Eye, which is a blueish Eye or Sight ; and all Horses that are so sighted, after extraordinary Heat and Travel, will be blue, and have a Film overgrow the Sight, so as he cannot see, although he be cured, but upon the like occasion will fall blind again. An experienced Friend of mine always cured this Disease by thrusting *Tutty* into the Eyes with his Finger : But if you lay upon the Temples of his Head a Plaister of *Pitch*, *Rosin*, and *Mastick*, and then with a sharp Knife make two slits on both sides of his head an inch long, somewhat towards the Nose, a handful beneath the Eyes, not touching the Vein, and with a Cronet loose the Skin upwards, the breadth of a Groat, and thrust therein a round piece of Leather, as broad as a two-penny piece, with a hole in the midst, to keep the hole open ; and look to it once a day, that the Matter may not be stopped, but run ten or eleven days, then heal it with *Turpentine*, *Hogs-grease*, and *Wax* boyled together, with *Flax* dipped in it, and take not the Plaisters off till they fall away ; then burn him with a small hot drawing Iron, made like a Star, with a hole in the midst in each Temple-Vein where the Plaister did lye, in this man-

manner ** : and if this help not, set him to Cart : Beware you breed no Colts of Horses that are so yed, for upon every hard Travel they will be blind.

These Infirmities are cured by this following Medicine ; All Wounds in general, all Sinews cut, all Wounds with shot, burning with Lime, Mad-dog biting, Foundring, Fretting, Surbaiting, all loose Hoofs, casting of the Hoof, Hoof-bound.

Take of Turpentine, Wax, Hogs-grease, of each a like quantity ; first melt the yellow Wax and Hogs-grease, upon a soft fire ; then take it off, and dissolve the Turpentine into it, and stir it very well together ; then put it into a Gally-pot and let it cool ; and with this Salvetent or plaister any Wound or Sore, and it will heal it. Also with the same anoint the Cronets of the Horses Hoofs, and putting Wheat-bran unto it, it being boyled hot, stop your Horses feet therewith, in case either of Founder, of Erettize, Surbait, or such like Infirmities.

For the Staggers.

The Cause of this Disease is, for that the Brain and the Stomack are united and chained together with certain Sinews, and thereby interchangeably communicate their damages, so as when the Stomack is oppressed with the gross and tough Humours, or some strong Vapours, as when the Horse hath eat some strong Herb, as the wild Parsnips, or such like, by the strong vapouring Spirits proceeding out of the Stomack to the Brain, oppressing the same, as the strong vaporous Spirit of Wine, Aquavita, and such like, do the brain of Man, he is dizzy, and reeleth as if he were drunk ; at the first he doth only reel and stagger as if his Back were swayed, and will eat his Meat, but afterwards he will forsake it, and not be able to stand. The Cure is, let him blood in the Temple-Veins, one handfull under the Eyes, then take Garlick, Herb-grace, a little Leaven and Bay-salt, stamp them together, and then put thereinto a little quantity of Aquavita, and put it into the Horse's Ears, and bind them close, and so let it remain twenty four hours, and wash his Tongue with Vinegar and Salt ;

140 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey

Salt ; let him not drink any cold Water, and once a day gently walk him.

Another for the same.

Take *Bitter Almonds* one ounce and a half, of *Ox-Gall* two drams, of *Black Hellebore* stamp one half penny worth, of *Groins*, of *Castorium*, of *Vinegar*, of *Varnish* five drams ; sethe them together until the *Vinegar* be consumed ; strain it, and put it into his Ears, as aforesaid : but bind them with a Woollen Lint, not with a cutting String.

A Sovereign Medicine called the Emperour of all Medicines concerning Horses.

Take of *Wheat-meal* six pounds, or as much as will bring all the Simples following to a stiff Paste: of *Almonds* two ounces, of *Cummin-seed* six drams, of *Carthamus* one dram and a half, of *Fenugreek-seed* one ounce and two drams, of *Brimstone* an ounce and a half, and of *Sallet-Oyl* one pint and two ounces, of *Honey* one pound and a half, of *White-Wine* four pints ; and all this must be made into a very stiff Paste, the hard Simples being pounded, and searfed to a fine Powder, and so mixed with the sweet Simples: After this Paste is made, it must be kept in a very clean Cloth ; and when you have occasion to use it, you shall take thereof as much as will make a round Ball as big as a Mans Fist ; and this Ball you shall by continual washing, laying, and squeezing, dissolve into a Gallon of running Water, to give it the Horse to drink, either after his Heats, or any violent Labour or Exercise, or when he is sick, poor, lean, or inwardly diseased, and full of foul Surfeits ; and then you shall suffer him to drink thereof as much and often as he plealeth, the Colour of the Water will offend him to take it, therefore at the first offer it him in the dark, of which when he hath but once tasted, he will then forsake all Water whatsoever to drink of this only. Now touching the Virtues which appertain to this Medicine, they are these : First, if your Horse be never so poor, lean, surfeited, and diseased, if you give your Horse of this Water with the Ball dissolved in it as aforesaid,

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 141

id, it will in fourteen days not only cleanse and scour
him, but also purifie the Blood, enliven and quicken him
in a wonderful manner. Secondly, it will be a means to
prevent any Sicknes for a long time. Thirdly and Lastly,
it will make him continue in good Case, feed lustily, and
gain Flesh apace, though before he was very Lean.

A safe Purge to prevent Sicknes.

Take a quarter of a pound of red *Saunders*, and the like
quantity of fresh Butter, make them up, and give them as
the former; or *Rosemary* Leafs bruised and mixed with
Butter or green Figs, so ordered; and let those that under-
take the Cure of Horses, observe particularly these five
things:

1. To what Diseases Horses are inclinable.
2. From what Cause they proceed.
3. By what means the Causes do accrue.
4. The Tokens by which any Distemper is known.
5. And how to apply apt and seasonable Remedies.

For the Cramp, or Convulsion of the Sinews.

The cause of this Disease, is over-much Fulness, or very
great Eating and Feeding, much Rest, want of moderate
Exercise; or by over-much Bleeding, extream Labour, or
extream Cold. That which proceeds from great Fulness
and Rest, comes suddenly. That which comes by Empti-
ness, or Penury, goes on-by little and little. I have seen
a Horse had his Head awry, and Neck so stiff, as if he
could not bow any manner of way, nor the strength of
Men open his Jaws, or Mouth, without breaking of them:
His Eyes hollow in his Head, and the fleshy parts thereof
turned backwards: His Tongue so benumbed, that he
could not eat nor drink, but by sucking of his drink by
little and little, with his Lips: All which came by a full
and foul Feeding, and too much Rest; being, notwithstand-
ing, exceeding Fat when he Dy'd. The cure of this Dis-
ease is, to take a great quantity of Blood from him; rake
him behind, and give him a Glister of *Mallows*, *Camomile*
and *Fennel*, boyled in Milk.

142 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

How to order him after this, for the Recovery of his Limbs, &c.

Let him be rubbed by two or three lusty strong Men, and keep him in a very warm Room; then take two quarts of strong Ale, and two pound of black Soap, and boyl them together till they look like Tar, and anoint and rub all his Body therewith, so as that it may drink it in; then Cloath him, and stuff his Head and Neck close, and all the parts of his Body, to bring him into a great Sweat; give him a pint of White-wine, two ounces of Aloes, and half an ounce of Agarick infused therein, beaten small, putting therein three spoonfuls of clarified Hogs-grease; and, if that will not do, give him every day a Glister; keep him warm, and well rubbed; then give him small Ale to drink, wherein Mallows and Liguorish have been boiled; let his Diet be small, but sweet and good.

For a cold in the Head.

The cause hereof, proceeds from some Heat, or standing too much still; or from having some Air piercing his Head when he is hot; or from some Humours congealed after long Rest, and full Feeding; or through his wanting of moderate Exercise to expell the same. The Signs are, a continual distilling Rheum, waterish Eyes, or his short drawing of Breath at the Nostrils, when the Canes and the Passages of the Breath are stopped. The Cure is, Put upon his Head a double Hood, and every Morning when he is Fasting, ride him; take two Goose Feathers dipp'd in Oyl of Bay, and thrust them up into his Nostrils; through the ends whereof, with a Needle, put two Threads, to fasten the same to the Head-stall, so as the Feathers cannot fall out; and to the Snaffle or Bit, that he is ridden with, fasten a root or two of Polypodium of the Oak, which hath been steeped all Night in Spike Oyl, and every time you ride him, anoint the same with the said Oyl; and when he cometh home, put on his Head the double Hood, and Perfume him hot with Frankincense, casting a Cloath over his Head. Use him thus nine days together, and give him warm Water, or good Mash, during the said nine days;

for

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 143

for all Rheums having continuance, are dangerous, and many times (having continuance) Remediless, and leave behind them a worse Disease than themselves.

These Infirmities are cured by the Medicine following. The Poll-Evil: The swelling after Blood-letting: The Weathers hurt; galled Backs: Sit-fasts: The Navel-Gall: Fistula's: Biting with Venomous Beasts, or Worms.

For any of these filthy Impostumations, Galls, or Swellings, you may take the *Earth-loam* of a *Mud-wall*, which hath no Lime in it, but only Earth, Straw, or Litter, and you shall boil it in strong *Wine-Vinegar*, till it become very thick, like a Poulter's; then, being very hot, apply it to the Sore, renewing it once in Twelve or Twenty four hours; and it will not only ripen and break it, but also Draw it, Search it, and Heal it most perfectly; as Experience will manifest.

For the Glaunders.

The original cause of this Disease, is the *Rheum*, which being an abundant Moisture, and naturally very cold, at length congealeth, (according to the nature of Cold) and then proceedeth to *Kernels*, and so to *Inflammations*; which become so great in the end, that they seem to strangle and stop the breath of the Horse; from whence he is said to have the *Strangles*; and by continuance of time, the same perish either the Liver or the Lungs, by a continual distilling of putrify'd and corrupt Matter: The Signs are apparent to every Man that hath Sight, and the diversity of Medicines, infinite. The beginning always of this Disease, is taking of Cold, after too much Heat; the which cannot be avoided from a Horse that hath full Feeding, and great Rest; more especially, if his Diet be naught; or by the use of continual Travel upon a full Stomach; or, before his Body be made clean after long rest; for the standing Pool is ever Muddy. The Cure is, *First*, Clear his Head, as is prescribed for the Cold of the Head, in every part, (if he be able to be Rid or Walked) that he may receive Breath; then give him this Drink: Take a pint of *Malmsey*,

sey, and six penny-worth of the best *Treacle*, and a quarter of a pint of *sweet fresh Butter*; then presently rub him under the Jaws with plenty of *Hogs Grease*, and leave it thick anointed; then make him this *Poultis*: Take two handfuls of *Mallows*, a handful of *Wormwood*, as much *Rue*, and as much *Smallage*; a quart of *Wheat-bran*, and a quart of *Hogs-grease*, boil them together, and stir them continually in the boiling, untill the *Hogs-grease* be almost consumed; and being as hot as may be suffered, bind it under his Jaws and Thrope, and wrap all his Head very warm, leaving Air for his Mouth and Nostrils; then Air him again with *Frankincense*, and keep him warm in the Stable, and so let him rest with that *Poultis* twenty four hours: The next Morning give him a quart of the best *New-Ale*, with a spoonful of the *Powder of Liquorish*, and *Aniseeds*, and a good piece of *Butter*, blood warm; then rub his Nostrils with a clout bound to the end of the Stick, well anointed with *Oyl of Bay* and *Butter*; then remove the *Poultis*; and if you find the *Kernels* and *Inflammation* to be very soft, Lance them through, and stop the holes full of *Hogs-grease* and *Turpentine*, boiled hot together, and soft *Tow* boiled therein; then warm some of your *Poultis* and bind it on, as before, but not altogether so hot, and so let it remain untill the next day.

How to order the Horse after this, for a perfect Cure.

Keep his Head warm, as before. If he will eat, give him clean sweet *Oats*, steeped in *New-Ale*, or *Malmsey*, if he will eat them; and *Wheat straw*, but no Hay: Give him no cold Water for nine days, but good *Mashes*, if he will take them: Keep him in a spare Diet, and every day, gently walk or ride him, if he be able; then keep him warm after it; and if it be possible, let him sweat every day a little, and after rub him very dry, and let him not drink in his sweat. In his Provender, Take of the root of *white Lilly*, of the root of *Enula Campana*, and of the root of *Polypodium* of the Oak, very finely cut or chopped, the quantity of two Spoonfuls, every Morning that you give him Provender, and be sure that he be hungry and eager

The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey. 145

of Provender when you give it him, and so continue for Nine days ; and besure that you keep him very hungry, and (as hath been said) with spare Diet. At the Nine days end, give him his purging Drink : Take a quart of *White-Wine*, or of strong *Alewort*, an ounce and an half of *Alloes*, beaten into Powder ; half an ounce of *Agarick* ; two Spoonfuls of the Powder of the Root of *Enula Campana* ; three Spoonfuls of *Honey* ; brew them well together, give it him blood-warm ; and keep him warm : Within six days after, let him blood, and if it be good, take but a quart ; but if very bad, take two quarts at least. After this, use him both in Feeding and Labour, moderately, and he will afterwards be in perfect Health.

The Mourning of the Chine, its Cause and Cure.

The Cause hereof, is great Heat, and afterwards taking of Cold : And, *First*, It beginneth with *Rheum* ; then the *Glanders* ; and afterwards the *Mourning of the Chine* ; (as it is usually termed) but more truly and essentially, it beginneth with the *Rheum*, which proceedeth to Inflammation of the Liver and the Lungs, by continual distilling upon them ; then to the *Glanders*, which is the Impoſthumation thereof ; and lastly, to an *Exalaration*, which abruptly, and untruly, is called the *Mourning of the Chine*. The Signs to know the Disease, are these : 1. The continual distilling of *Rheum* in the Head. 2. The continuing Knobs betwixt the Jaws. 3. The keeping of his Hair without casting. 4. The continual running of thick stinking Matter at the Nole. 5. The fasting and growing of a knob as big as a Walnut, to the inside of one of the Jaws ; which if so, commit his Carcass to the Crows, for he is past all help. The Cure for such a Horse as may be curable, is to follow these Directions. For the *First*, which is *Rheum*, the cure I have mentioned for the Cold in the Head. For the *Second*, which is a congealed Substance, gathered into two knobs betwixt the Jaws, it is cured as the *Glanders*. For the *Third*, which is keeping still his Winter Coat, and not casting off his Hair, let him Blood often, until you see that he hath pure and fine Blood, and

146 The Gentleman's Complient Jockey.

give him good Mashes, made very strong with Malt; and put in his Provender, *Polypodium* of the Oak, small cut; the root of the *White-Lilly*, small cut, of each a good quantity, if he will eat; and shred in also, a quantity of *Liverwort*; and, if he be a Horse of value, at every time, a six penny weight of *Rubarb*; and every Morning, being Fasting, give him a pint of the Drink prescribed for the preservation of the Lungs, and keep him only with *Wheat-straw*, (but not Hay) and old sweet and clean Oats.

The manner of Ordering him after this.

Every Morning, after he hath taken that clean Drink, ride him two or three Miles. For the *Fourth*, which is the thick running at the Nose, continually clear his Head, as hath been prescribed for the Cold in the Head; and so in every part, as the rest are prescribed, only adding of purging Drinks; viz. After all these prescribed Orders, give him two several Mornings, a pint of *White-Wine*, an ounce and an half of *Alloes*, half an ounce of *Agarick*, two drams of *Liquorish* and *Aniseeds*, and a spoonful of pure *Hogs-grease*, warmed and well dissolved together; and after he hath Purged, the next day let him Bleed in both the Breast-Veins, the quantity of a quart, and still keep him with good Mashes, and moderate Travel: Give him every Morning fasting, for Nine days after, a pint of that Drink which I prescribed for the clearing of the Lungs. For the *Fifth*, If you find no amendment, but a knob grown to his Jaw, then you must give him a Purge with Pills, as I have prescribed; and if that help him not, then without all doubt, he is Remediless.

These following things are most excellent to put into Horses Provender, to preserve them from Diseases.

The Powder of *Wolfs Liver*; the Powder of *Enula Campana*; the Powder of *Polypodium* of the Oak; fine cut pieces of *Rubarb*; the Powder of *Brimstone*, made fine; the Powder of *Liquorish*; *Aniseeds*, *Fenugreek*, *Turmeric*, *Bay-berries*, *Long-Pepper*, *Agrimony*, *Cammomile*, *Wormwood*, *Saven*, *Linseed*, *Smallage*, *Parsley*, *Rue*, *Hysop*, *Colts-foot*, *Horehound*, and such like.

Broken

Broken Wind, the Cause.

The Causes why a Horse draws his Breath very short, may be many ; as Sicknes, great Fulness, or violent Exercise: But the reason of the cause is, For that the Heart being the only hottest part of the Body, from whence the Arteries and Veins do carry the heat thereof to every part of the Body ; (and therefore 'tis truly said, to be the Chariot of Life) when that by Sicknes, Fulness, or violence of Exercise, is choaked, and as it were, smothered with great heat, then do the Lights, being the Bellows to draw Breath, according to that Office that Nature hath ordained them unto, presently labour with all Violence, to draw it, to cool and comfort the Heart, and so consequently, all the Members and parts of the Body, to fill all the empty corners with Air, which naturally and in predominant Qualities, is moist ; and when they have drawn sufficient Breath, the driness and heat, by the moisture of the Air, is quenched ; which being so, then doth the Creature draw Breath leisurely and coldly, and not before ; but so long as the Heart is oppressed by the violent heat of Sicknes, or by great Fulness, or violent Exercise, the Canes, Pipes, and Passages for the Breath, are almost stopped and choaked up ; then do the Lungs labour very extreamly, to preserve the life of the Creature, which is the Heart ; and therefore it is said to be the first thing that Lieth, and the last that Dieth. And to make the same a little plainer, Observe a Horse that is Broken-winded, (as the usual term is) and you shall find, that he fetcheth his breath much shorter, when he is kept in the Stable only with dry Meat, than when he goeth to Grass ; and the only reason is, the coldness of the moist Food, which keepeth the Heart and all the Body in coolness, because the Humours that proceed from the digestion of Grass, are cool and moist, according to the natural qualities of Grass and raw Herbs.

For a broken Wind, the Cure.

Take the *Dung* of a Boar dried to Powder, a spoonful ;

H 2

Diapenshe

148 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

Diapenthe, two ounces ; the juice of *Spanish Liquorish* dissolved, an ounce, in a quarter of a pint of *Ale* ; put these into a pint of new Milk, and give it him warm fasting ; repeat it for five or six Mornings, and ride him a gentle pace after it, if the Weather be warm, or any ways seasonable, without letting him water, or eat any thing ; then put him into a warm Stable, give him a Mash of Oats and split Beans, and keep him clean Littered, and free from any noisom Scents : And the Lungs by this means, as also the Wind-pipe, being cleansed, the Breath by degrees, if you do not over labour, heat, or ride him in too much rainy Weather, will return to its former easie and moderate Breathing.

A most Sovereign Drink to preserve a Horse's Lungs and Liver clear ; the most excelling Knowlegde in a Horseman or Farrier.

Take the Tartar of *White-Wine Lees* (which is no other than the Lees of *White-Wine* dried to powder) an ounce and a half, of *Isop* two handfuls, of *Colts-foot* two handfuls, of *Horehound* one handful, of *Enula Campana-Roots* an ounce, four *Liquorish-sticks* bruised, *Aniseeds* an ounce, *Red Sugar-candy* four ounces, boyl them all in a quart of *Ale* ; and when it is half boyled, put to it of *Hyssop-water* twice Distilled, one pint, boyl them again, then strain it, and give it him very warm to drink ; the charge hereof is very small. If you have a delicate Horse, and have Cleared him, and Dieted him, (for I would not have the Master to be at any extraordinary Charge with a Jade) then every Morning that you shall Hunt him, or Exercise him, give him Fast-ing, a pint of this Drink, and so continue him, until you find him clean and in perfect Breath. The Lungs most principally ought to be kept clean, as they continually draw fresh Air to them, filling all the empty corners with Moistness ; and that is the reason why Horses are broken-winded, because the Lungs are imperfect to do their Office. And likewise your broken-winded Horses, when they are kept only with a dry sort of Meat, do draw their Breath much shorter than when they go to Grass, because Grass

is naturally Cold and Moist; and thereby his Heart being the more cold, the Horse draweth his Breath much better, and more at length: But if the Horse be clear, empty, and sound in Body, then doth he always draw his Breath alike: From which ground of Reason, three things may be collected and observed: The *First* is, That the Horse's Head be kept clear from all Obstructions, (the which evermore cometh of Cold) which greatly hindereth the drawing of Breath in the Body. *Secondly*, That the Skin of the Horse be kept clear and open, to draw Breath at the Pores of the Skin into the Body. *Thirdly*, That the *Canales Pulmonis*, the Pipes or Lanes of the Lungs, be not opilated or stopped through viscusous Phlegm, or tough Humours, like Bird-lime, or with Imposthumation in the Pipes, and to become Putrified; every one of which, in continuance of time, will destroy the Horse.

Of the Signs of the inward Sickneses of Horses.

To know the true Signs of the Sickneses: If they proceed from the first occasion, which is *Heat*, then the Signs are these, *First*, heaviness of Countenance, swelling in the Limbs, Scowring, or Looseness of the Body, in the beginning of the Sicknes; and Driness, or Costiveness in the latter end; short Breath and hot, with a loathing and forsaking of his Meat. If it proceed from the second occasion, which is *Cold*, then the Signs are also heaviness of Countenance; either dull, or else closed up Eyes; hard Boils, or big Pustles betwixt the Chops and the root of the Tongue; and sometimes a hard swelling up from the Chops to the roots of the Ear; a rotten and moist Cough, the Horse ever chewing some loose filthy Phlegmatick Matter in his Mouth, after his Coughing, which in one respect is no evil Sign, because it sheweth a rotten Cold that is but newly gotten, and soon to be cleansed; whereas, to cough clear and hollow, and not to chew after it, shews a dry Cold, that is of long continuance, sore, festered, and hard to be recovered. *Lastly*, His Body will fall away, and when he drinketh Water, it will issue forth at his Nostrils; his Eyes will be ever mattery and running, and

his Hair rough and stirring. If it proceed from the Third occasion, which is the Surfeit of Meat and Drink, either natural, or un-natural, then the Signs are these: *First*, Heaviness of Head and Countenance, in such a violent manner, that the Horse can hardly lift his Head from the Manger; a dull and dead Eye; a staggering and reeling Pace, and (if the Disease be far grown) a frantick and mad Behaviour, as biting the Rack and Manger, and at such as shall come about him; sometimes biting at himself, and beating his Head against the Wall, Boards, or Ground, and other frantick Passions: But if the Disease be less contagious in the Brain, but more inwardly settled at the Heart, then the Signs are *Yellows* in the Whites of the Eyes, and in the inside of both the upper and the neather Lips; (if the Disease be far gone) then a *Yellows* over all the Skin, and a continual faint Sweat doth break forth: And therefore by all means remember, that tho' the alteration of Colours is unnatural, yet withal you must understand, that it is not so in all cases: If the Dapple-gray, in process of time, turn to White; the dark Iron-gray, to a bright colour; the Black, to an Iron-gray, and such like, that this is a natural, and no unnatural alteration, and so no signs of Sicknes: And therefore not to be deceived at all, or to be doubtful, acquaint your self with the true colour and complexion of your Horse: which you shall best discern when he is at the pride and hight of Lust; when he is wanton, proud of flesh, and smooth, sleek, shining: And when you shall see this Complexion alter in part, or all, then ever expect some Sicknes. As you thus acquaint your self with the Complexion of your Horse, which I include in the Colours, so you must also have a settled knowledge of his Countenance and Gesture; and to that end, you must be careful to mark and note them, in all his Actions and Motions, as well within doors as without, as well in his play, as in his rest; at his times of Feeding, and at his times of Exercise: You shall note the cheerfulness of his Eye, the carriage of his Head and Neck; which are his angry Characters, and which be his pleasant; and when he biteth for Wantonness, or Offence: And these you shall best

best find out in his Feeding, in his Exercise and Play, in his Dressing; and if at any time you find any of these Characters fall on a sudden and that his Gesture is more lumpish-heavy, then call your self to an account of what you have done, either in Exercise, Feeding, Altring, or Ordering; for there is no doubt but there is Distemperature and Sicknels approaching, if it be not prevented.

Observations to be taken from the Horse's Feeding and Duing, as to the State of his Body, &c.

Having thus acquainted your self with Complexion and Countenance of your Horse, so you must also not be ignorant, but observe divers other outward and inward Qualities, for they are the greatest Light that can be, both to Health and Sicknels; and to this end, you shall especially mark his Filling and his Emptying; that is, his manner of feeding, and the manner of discharging his Body. In his feeding, whether he eats with a good Appetite, or a weak Stomach: The first is Healthful, the latter unwholsome; For if he eat with a good Appetite, he will Neigh and call for his Meat before it come: when either he seeth his Keeper, or a preparation for feeding, as fisting the Oats, chipping of the Bread, or the like; he will receive it cheerfully and greedily, shaking his Head, and shewing other signs of alacrity and rejoycing; which Qualities after he hath used, if on the sudden he refrain, and so receive his Meat dully and unpleasantly, it is a great sign of Sicknels. As in his feeding, so you shall mark his Qualities in emptying; as, the time, the place, the substance. The time, as whether he emptyeth in the night time better than in the day: The place where he emptyeth, better in the House, or Abroad; or when you are Mounted, whether before you begin Exercise, or else after some gentle motion, or stirring; whether at the Stable-door, or at some unusual places by the way, or in the ground where you give him his Exercise. Lastly, For the substance, whether it be much or little; if it be much, you must forbear Exercise, and make him empty the oftener; if it be little, then you may fall to labour at pleasure: Whether it be good or bad,

and that commonly falleth out according to the Food he eateth.

Things to be inferred from the before going Observations.

If it be clear, firm and pale, with white Grains, in complexion like sweet Soap, then it is wholsome; if it be Black, it shews Heat in the Body; if Greasie, then it shews Foulness; if Red and hard, it shews Costiveness; if Pale and loose, then inward Coldness. And as you thus observe his Ordure, so you must also observe his Meine, whether High, Low, &c. As these qualities of Feeding and Emptying, so you shall note his qualities in Rest and Watchings; that is, in his lying down and standing up; what hours and times he observeth for either, and how long he continueth in them: And if at any time you find sudden or gross alteration, then be assured of some Sicknes approaching; and thus do of any other particular Quality in your Horse, (which you shall observe in his Health) for it is impossible to nominate all; and if you find them suddenly to surprize, it is doubtful that there is some Sicknes following. As you thus observe the Complexions and Qualities of the Horse, so you must observe his natural Customs and Conditions, and how in his livelihood and best health, he standeth affected: To particularize or name them, I cannot, because they proceed most from hidden Inclinations, or else accidental Apprehension, which, by continuance of time, grow to natural Habits: And any of these, when they shall increase, or fail, are true prognostications of Distemperature and Sicknes. Many other signs of Sicknes there are; as the not casting of the Coat in due time; Hide-bound: Continual dislike and Leanness, where there is good Feeding. But on these I shall enlarge my self hereafter.

Some other choice Observations, for the preventing of all inward Sickneses.

The preventing of inward Sickneses, consisteth in two special Observations and Considerations: *First*, To prevent it before it come, that it may not offend at all. The *Second* is, To take it at the first appearance, and so to prevent it, that

that it ariseth not to any great danger or hazard. To prevent Sicknes; that it offend not your Horse at all. Tho' I have already treated on this Subject, yet I shall not omit to write what is of excellent concernment to the Practitioner. When you put your Horse to Grass, every three or four days before you turn him out, take blood from his Neck-Vein, then the next day after, give him a pint and a half of *Muscadine*, and half an ounce of the Powder of *Diapēthe*, or three quarters of an ounce of the *Horse-Mithridate*, and then by degrees to abate his Cloaths. You shall also observe, when you let your Horse blood, to proportion the quantity you take from him, according to the goodness or badness of the Blood, for the loss of good Blood, is unwholsome, and doth hurt; and to preserve ill Blood, is dangerous and noisome. Also, if you observe when you take Blood from your Horse, to receive it into a Vessel, and stir it about continually, as the Horse bleedeth, to keep it from clotting; then having bled him, take the Blood and besmear it all over the Horse's Back and Body, you shall find it wonderful wholsome to him, for it comforteth his Body, cleareth his Skin, and breedeth a rejoicing in all the Horse's internal parts. Now if you have no determination to put your Horse to Grass, and yet you would prevent inward Sicknes, then you shall observe once in two or three Months, (when you have the best leisure to rest your Horse after it) not to fail to give him *Muscadine* and *Diapēthe*, and *Horse-Mithridate*, as was before shewed, and not to let him Blood at all; for this very Potion is the greatest purger and purifier of the Blood that can be, and voideth all that yellow Cholerick Matter, and other evil and undigested Humours, which corrupt the Blood. Now you are to observe here, that although I only prescribe *Muscadine*, wherein you shall dissolve your Powder, or *Mithridate*; yet know, that when you cannot get *Muscadine*, or other sweet Wine, that then you may take strong Ale, or Beer, but in a greater quantity; for whereas you take but a pint and a half of Wine, you shall take of Beer or Ale, a full Ale-quart; as for the Powder of *Mithridate*, you shall keep the first quantity already prescribed; and

if you warm your Beer or Ale a little on the Fire, it will not be amiss, but better. Now to take a Sicknes at the first Approach, and to prevent it, that it may not arise not to any great danger, you shall by all means observe to look well into the Occasions of Sickneses, which are already shewed, and into the Signs of those Occasions; and if you find your self guilty of any of them, or that the Horse discover any of the former Signs, then presently let him Blood, and three several Mornings after, give him the Drink or Potion before prescribed, and undoubtedly it will prevent all the force of Sicknes, and restore the Horse to his Strength, and good estate of Body.

To refine the Blood, and save the Liver from Infection.

Take of *Polipodium* of the Oak, made very clean, cut it into small pieces, then take a handful of *Liver-wort*, cut it in small pieces, together with six-penny weight of *Rheubarb* cut small, and every Morning, for three or four days in a Month, give it the Horse in his Provender, very early, two or three hours before his watering; and once in half a Year make tryal of his Blood how pure it is, and accordingly Minister help if need be. This Medicine is highly esteemed of by those that have experienced it.

Of Bleeding in any Heart-Sicknes, or in any ordinary inward Sicknes.

I will now descend to the Cure of these inward Sickneses: And though every several Sicknes have a several Cure, yet I will draw all here into one sudden, but certain and infallible proved Method, ever found prosperous and fortunate. Whensoever, by Signs before rehearsed, or other Accident or Knowledge, you shall find your Horse grievously pained with inward Sicknes, the first thing you shall do open his Neck-Vein, and receive some of the first Blood into a Pewter Porringer, which, if you set it in cold Water, will presently discover the Foulness and Putrefaction; then let the Horse bleed well till the Blood change; neither must you be nice or tender in this Action, because you must understand that all inward Sickneses in
Horses

Horses draw their Effects from the Putrefaction of the Blood only. And this is the Reason. It is certain that the Horse, of all other Creatures, hath no natural Vessel into which to receive the scummy and putrefied matter which ariseth from corrupt and Cholerick Blood, but it is either voided in Excremental Humours, or moderate Exercise and Sweats, or else by immoderate Exercise and violent Labour. By too much Repletion and Fulness, by unwholesome Food and evil Diet, or by some other natural Defect, this Cholerick Corruption increasing and overflowing, it presently, and in an instant overspreads the whole Body, having its Course through every Vein, and so discoloureth the Skin, and makes all the outward parts yellow, especially the Eyes and inside of the Lips; also mixing with the better Blood, and confounding the Strength and Vertue thereof, it brings a general Fairness over the Body, and in the end suffocateth the Heart; of force there must follow sudden and certain Mortality; and hence proceeds those sudden Deaths of Horses, for which our weak Farriers can give but a foolish and idle Account. But to return to the purpose; after you have taken away good store of Blood, and (as you imagine) all, or at least, the most part of that which is corrupt, then set him up in the Stable, tying his Head to the Rack gently, and at Liberty, neither so high that he shall be compelled to rest his Head upon the Bridle, nor yet so low, that he may thrust his Head into the Manger; and thus you shall let him stand at least two hours.

How to prepare your Horse after bleeding to receive what is necessary for remedying dangerous Sicknes.

If the Sicknes be not contagious and dangerous; administer not any Potion to him that day, because the Vein being opened, and all the numerous Powers and Faculties of the Body disturbed, it will be a double Vexation to his Spirits to go also through the working of the Potion; therefore in this case, the Sicknes not being violent, you may forbear farther Administration, and only after the Horse hath tasted you shall give him such Food as he will

eat, whether it be Hay, Bread, or Corn; and always provide that it be strong, savory, sweet, dry, and clean drest; as for the Quantity it matters not, for a small Pittance at that time will maintain him; besides Emptiness is no great Displeasure. At high Noon you shall give him a sweet Mash of Malt and Water made in this manner: Take half a peck of good Malt well ground, and put it into a Pale by it self, then take a Gallon of fair clear Water, and set it on the Fire; then when it is come to the hight, that it is ready to boyl, put as much of it to the Malt as will moist and cover the Malt all over, and stir them exceeding well together, crushing the Malt with a flat Rudder as much as you can, ever and anon tasting it with your Finger, till it be as sweet as any Honey, and then cover it over as close as you can, and so let it stand and stowe for two or three hours at the least; then the hour being come in which the Horse is to receive it, uncover the Mash and stir it about; but finding it to hot, then put to it some clear cold Water, that may temper and allay it, but in any wise not so much as may take away any part of the Sweetness; and in this tempering, with your hand crush and squeeze the Malt as much as you can; the Mash being lukewarm, give it to the Horse to drink; and if he eat of the Malt, let him take thereof at his Pleasure. This is the best manner of making of an ordinary Mash, or Horse-Caudle, for it is of that nature and quality; and to that purpose that a Caudle is administred to Man, is this given to a Horse; for you must understand, that in these contagious Diseases, nothing is more pestilent than cold Water, and especially when that Exercise cannot be used. The ruder Farriers and Horse-Grooms, do make the Mash another way, putting the Malt to the Water at the first, and so boyling them both together; but this is unwholsom and nought, and that every good Hot swife can witness; for this long boiling over-scalds the Malt, and takes away the Strength and Sweetness, and gives a harsh and unsavory Taste, which is offensive to the Horse's Nature. If your Horse be coy, and refuse to take the Mash, as many are, partly for want of Use and Custom, and partly for Weakness

ness of Stomach, than you shall strain the Water from the Malt exceeding hard, and so give him with a Horn to drink; then take the Grains which you have so strained, and put them in the Manger before the Horse, on which, whether he feed or no, it matters not; for if he but smell and snuff his Nose upon them, it is sufficient; for the Fume thereof is wondrous wholesome for his Head. After you have given him the Mash, see that he be warmly cloathed, as namely a good Woollen Body-cloath to come round about his Heart, a large Cloath or two to come over it, and to be wispt round about, with soft, thick, and large Whisps; for the little, hard, and neat Whisps, though they are comely to the Eye, yet they are unwholsome for the Body for Hardness and Smallness makes an Impression into the Horse's sides, causeth him to forbear to lye down, when Nature and Rest requireth it. The Horse being thus warm cloathed, you shall then cause one or two to rub all his four Legs from his Knees and Lamtrels downwards, with very hard Whisps, and to rub them as hard as may be; and whilst his Limbs are thus in rubbing, take a coarse Rubbert or two, made of new hardned temper Cloath, and warming one after another over a pan of Coals, with them rub the Horse exceedingly much in the Nape of his Neck, and the Pole, just betwixt his Ears, and on the Temples of his Head; for there is nothing that is more wholesome than these Frictions and Chafings, for they dissolve Humours, and revive all natural Heat, being a cheerful Nimbleness to the Limbs, and purge the Head of gross Cold, and rough Matter, cleansing and purifying the Brain; by which the Members and other Faculties are fortified, and the whole Body reduced back to its full Strength and Ability. As soon as you have ended this Friction of rubbing, you may then let the Horse take his Rest for two or three hours, and only leave a Lock or two of sweet Hay in his Rack, and no more; for the least quantity of any thing is too much, and soon cloyes a sick Horse.

An Excellent Perfume for Inward Sickness, &c.

In the Evening come to your Horse again, and having rubbed

rubbed all his Limbs and Head, as you did before, then perfume his Head in this manner. Take of the best and purest *Olibanum* an ounce, as much of *Benjamin* and *Rax*, and bruise them all together; I do not mean bruise them to small Powder, but only break them in small Lumps, and mix them well together, and so taking them up between your Fingers, you may not take up one Ingredient alone, but some of all; then take a Chafing-dish, if you have one, let it be after the manner of the perfuming Chafing-dishes, which are wide below where the Fire is, and narrow at the top, where the smoak avoideth; and in this Chafing-dish put well-kindled Wood-Coals, or small Charcoal, then take some of the aforesaid Perfume, and lay it upon the Coals, but in any wise so that it may not flame, but smoak; then hold the Chafing-dish to the Nose of the Horse, and let the smoak go into his Nostrils, and thus perfume him well for the space of a quarter of an hour, or half an hour at the most. Now it may be the Horse may seem coy to receive this at the first, because it is strange to him; but do you continue the Action, and cherish him; for be you well assured, after he hath once received the Smell into his Head, he will be as greedy to have it, as you are willing to give it, for there is nothing that delighteth a Horse more, or more rejoiceth his Spirits than sweet savours, and odoriferous Smells, of which this Perfume is one of the chiefest; the Effects which this Perfume worketh is, that it purgeth the Brain of all filthy and corrupt Matter, (as you shall find by experience in the working) it dissolves tough Matter into Water, and brings it away in such abundance, that it is sometimes ready to extinguish the Fire as it falleth. It is the greatest comforter of the Brain that can be, and from thence sends such Cheerfulness to the Heart, that it rejoiceth the whole Body.

An excellent Receipt, with Directions for Ordering a Horse in extream Sicknes and danger of Life.

After your Horse hath been well Perfumed, as aforesaid, let him rest for a quarter of an hour, and then give him such Food as he will eat, either Bread, or Oats, how little he
eats

eats it skills not, for it is to be intended that his Stomach is now at the weakest. After he is fed, you shall toss up the Litter ; for you must know, that he is to stand upon the Litter all night and the next day : Besure to have him Fast-ing, and then the next Morning early, you shall take half an ounce of the Powder of *Diapenthe*, as the *Greeks* call it, because of the number Five : Take half an ounce of this Powder, and put it into a pint of the best *Muscadine*, and Brew them well together in two Pots, tossing it to and fro, because otherwise the Myrrh will clotter and lump together ; and after it is well brewed, give it the Horse in a Horn, then, if he have any small strength, mount his Back and walk him up and down in some warm or Sunny place for an Hour, then set him up in the Stable warm and well Littered, and tying his Back to the Bridle, let him so stand, and Fast for another hour, or more ; then give him Meat, and so let him stand till betwixt Twelve and One of the Clock in the Afternoon ; at which time rub him as formerly, then Perfume him, as was before said : Both them Works being finished, give him a sweet Mash, and so let him rest to the Evening, at which time, offer him Meat, but in a little quantity, as handful by handful, and let him rest till Eight of the Clock at Night, at which time again Perfume him, then give him Meat, and cloath him warm, make clean his Stable, and leave him to his Rest that Night.

A closing Method to perfect the Cure of dangerous Sicknes in a Horse, pursuant to the former Rules.

The next day, being the third day, you shall do all things as you did the second day, already rehearsed ; at first, you shall give him his Potion of *Diapenthe* and *sweet-wine*, then Air him : At Noon give him his Mash : At the Evening and Night, his Perfume, with all observations that were before declared. The next day, which is the fourth day, there is no doubt (with the blessing of God) but you'll find alteration, and health approaching ; you may know it by his Stomach, and by his more cheerful Countenance ; as also by other outward Gestures : And finding that Health

is coming, you may then forbear to give him any more Potions, only attend him with good Food, good Dressing, and moderate Exercise: Neither shall you give him any more Mashies; for tho' they be wholesome in the extremity of Sicknes, yet being any thing too much used, they will take away the Horse's Stomach, and bring him to a Loathing of other Meat; and therefore instead thereof, in the Morning when the Horse is well rubbed and drest, take a Pottle of fair Water, and heat it scalding hot, then put it into a Gallon or two of clear cold Water, that it may take away the extream coldness thereof, and then, being scarcely luke-warm, give it the Horse to drink: You may, if you please, throw a handful of *Brax*, or a handful of *Wheat-meal* into the Water, for it is good. As soon as the Horse hath drank, Baek him, and ride him forth gently for an hour or two: At Noon, Perfume him: At Evening Water him, as you did in the Morning, and ride him in the like manner: Feed him at usual Hours, as in the time of Health: And thus do for two or three days more: then finding his strength increasing, you may by degrees (according as the Season is) abate the Cloaths; you may also Water him a-broad at some clear River, or Spring: Gallop him after his Watering; and draw every thing to the same custom as you did in his best Health-

An Excellent Medicine for any violent Sicknes, if the Horse be at the point of Death.

If you have a Horse in this extremity and desperate case, then the first thing you do, shall be to open his Neck-Vein, and let him blood very well; then two hours after his bleeding, take two ounces of the Powder of *Diapente*, and beat it in a Mortar with as much clarified *Life-Honey* as will bring it to a substantial Treacle: When this Confection is made, take half an ounce thereof, or more, and dissolve it in a pint and an half of *Muscadine*, and so give it to the Horse to drink with a Horn, and if he have so much ability of Body, walk him up and down for half an hour, either in some Sunny place, or close Barn, or empty House; then set him up, and let him fast another hour: At Noon
give

give him, if you can get it, a Gallon, or near thereabouts, of the first running of the strongest Ale, before it be put to Barn, when it is clear, strong, and carrieth a Royal on the top: But when this is not to be had, then give him a sweet Mash, Perfume, Rub, Cloath, Diet, and Order him in all respects as were shewed you in the former Cure. And thus you shall do for three days together without fail, and then no doubt but you shall see Health approaching.

How to Order your Horse after receiving the fore-going Medicine, to perfect his Recovery.

At the end of three days, forbear all sorts of Mashies of both kinds, and follow all the Prescriptions before declared. Now, if during the Cure, either through the violence of Medicine, or the foulness of the Horse's Body, you shall find any hard Pustles to rise up betwixt the Horse's Chaps and at the root of the Tongue, then you shall first clip away the Hair as close as may be; then you shall take a Wax-candle, and therewith burn the Swelling, till you scarifie the Skin, then take a piece of Leather somewhat larger then the Swelling, and having prick'd it all over with the point of your Knife, spread thereupon thick, your black Shoo-makers Wax that is well season'd and new; then warming it upon a few Coals, laying it upon the Swelling, and remove it not, till either it fall off of it self, or else the Sore breaks; then renew the Plaster, and with it heal up the Sore. This Plaster for the cheapness and meanness, will hardly gain credit with those that are Curious; but I dare assure you, that there is not a more excellent or soveraign Plaster which belongs to a Horse; for it ripeneth and breaketh any Impostumation whatsoever: It asswageth any hard Swelling or Tumor, whether in the Joints, or any other fleshy parts, and it healeth what it breaketh, or ripeneth; and with its heat, dissolves all manner of Humours that are knit together, or occasion pain and swelling.

To help a Horse that cannot Dung, after having been Sick.

There is another Accident which attendeth the Sicknes of Horses, and that is Costiveness, or Belly-binding, which maketh a Horse that he cannot Dung, or avoid his Ordure. This Accident, when at any time it happeneth, it shall be good for you first to rake him, then anoint your Hand all over with *sweet Butter*, or clarified *Hags-grease*: Some use Oil of *Bay*; but it is too sharp and too hot, and many times (if the action be used too roughly, or unadvisedly) it breedeth an exulceration or forenes in the Tail and inward parts: Therefore either take *sweet Butter* or *Hags-grease*, and your hand being all besmeared therewith, thrust it up into his Tuel until you feel his Ordure, then draw out as much thereof (if it be black) as conveniently you can; also, take a great Candle of three or four in the Pound at least, and cutting off an Inch or two at the upper or smaller end, with your Hand anoint as before, thrusting the great end forward, put it up into his Tuel so far as you can get it; then suddenly drawing out of your Hand, and leaving the Candle behind you, clap down his Tail close to his Tuel, and drawing it up between his Legs, hold it with your Hand hardy and constantly for the space of an hour or more, in which time the Candle will dissolve in the Horse's Body, and so separate and break his Ordure, and upon the letting loose of your Hand, he will presently Dung. This you may do in every case of Extremity, but not otherwise: And believe it, you will find this the most excellent Suppository of all other; and there is no Glister that can work with greater efficacy or more wholesomeness.

Of the danger of Laxativeness in a Horse, and how to Remedy it.

There is another Accident which attendeth the Sicknes of Horses, and this is quite contrary to that before rehearsed, and it is called Laxativeness, or Looseness of the Body, which is expressed by a vehement and violent Scowring: This, if at any time it shall happen, you shall at first note the

the violence thereof, and the continuance thereof. The violence is known by the thinness or sharpness, and the often and speedy voiding of the Excrements. The continuance is known by the unchangeableness of the Infirmary, and by the process and long continuance of time, contrary to all natural and wholesome custom; for you are to observe, that a Horse may have a Scowring for a day, or a little more, and this is not unwholesome, but natural and good; and if after, it stay of it self, then it worketh no evil effect; but if it continue longer, and bring the Horse into an extraordinary weakness of Body, then seek to stop it in this manner: Take a quart of *Milk*, putting thereto a good spoonful or two of fine *Bean-flower*, and as much *Bale-Armoniack* finely beaten to Powder, boyl altogether till the *Milk* thicken, and then being made luke-warm, give it the Horse with a Horn; and doing thus a Morning or two, no doubt but that it will Bind the Horse; which if it doth not, then you shall take a quart of *Red-wine*, and put thereunto a handful of the Herb call'd *Shepherd's Purse*, and half so much of *Tanner's Bark*, and boyl all very well together, till the Herb and the Bark be soft; then strain it, and put therelinto of the Powder of *Cinnamon*, and being made lukewarm, give it to the Horse to drink with a Horn; and this do a Morning, two or three, if need require.

The means to help and preserve Horses from inward Diseases.

There are four ways and means to keep Horses from inward Diseases, viz. *Purging*, *Sweating*, *letting of Blood*, and *Vomiting*, whereof in Order. First, Of *Purging*; which may be said to be two-fold, Outward, and Inward: The time of *Purging* or cleansing the Horse, must be presently after the taking of the Horse from Grass, into the Stable, which should be at or before the Feast of St. *Bartholomew*, by reason of the great moisture and cold that then happeneth, and to be taken up very gently, for fear of Over-heating of him, lest his Humours thereby should be dissolved by the Veins and Arteries, into every part of the Body. And that every Horse at such times are full of Humours, appeareth

164 The Gentleman's Compleat Jockey.

appeareth in the best Spirited Horses, if you then perceive their Actions, how heavy they perform them at such times. The manner of purging and clearing the outward parts of the Body, should be in this manner. First, shave his Ears, and a little place behind, for the Head-stall to lye flat and even; then take *Soap* and anoint his Head and Jaws therewith; and then take warm *Bucklie* and wash and cleanse the same in every part, so clean as is possible, from all Sweat or Scurf, and presently rub his Head and every part with clean Linnen Cloaths, and after with Woollen Cloaths very dry; then put thereon a double Hood or Biggen, made on purpose to keep all the parts of his Head very warm: If it be a fair warm day, in the Sun, in like manner wash, purge and cleanse all his Body, and every part thereof, especially his Main, Tail, and Cods: Then rub him and clear him very dry; Cloath him and stuff him very warm, and give him plenty of sweet and clean Litter; then anoint all his Hoofs (having first washed them and made them dry) with this Ointment; Take of *Turpentine* and *Sheeps-fuet*; half a pound of unwrought *Wax*; a quarter of *Alloin*; of *Sallet Oil*, half a pint; of *Tar*, a quarter of a pint: Boll them altogether until they are well Incorporated; keep it in a Pot, and every day (his Feet being clean) anoint his Hoofs therewith; neither let him go to Grass (if he be a Horse of worth) above one Month in the Year.



F I N I S.

THE CONTENTS.

O F the Nature and Properties of Horses.	Page 1
The Means to make the Seed of the Horse Perfect for Generation.	2
Observations for the better breeding of a Mare.	3
Of what Age the Horse or Mare ought to be that Beget and Bring forth.	ibid.
To know whether a Mare hath Conceived, &c.	ibid.
Of Taming of Colts.	4
Of making of Colts to Amble from the time of their Foaling.	5
Of the Stable.	ibid.
Of Shooing of Horses.	7
How to know a Horse that is durable in a Journey, &c.	9
How to know a free and perfect spirited Horse.	10
Of the Shape of a Horse.	11
Of the Colours of Horses.	13
Of the Horses Marks.	14
How to know a Horse that is bold by Nature.	ibid.
How to make a white Scar or Spot in a Horse's Face, &c.	15
To keep your Wollen Horse-Cloaths, &c. from Moths.	ibid.
How to defend a Horse from Flies.	16
Observations in Electing of Horses, and the Uses.	ibid.
To fatten a lean Horse in a short time.	18
A certain way to know the Age of a Horse by his Teeth, &c.	ib.
Further general Rules necessary to be known by the Horseman and Farrier, from warrantable Experience.	19
Directions for Ordering a Horse designed for Exercise, &c.	20
Opinions as to Saddling and Bridling a Horse.	21
The best Method for Backing a Horse.	22
The Compleat Horseman: Or true Art of Horsemanship, &c.	23
Of Correction.	25
Teaching not fit for such Horses as Nature hath not framed fit to be Taught.	ibid.
Of the Bridle, Saddle, and bringing the Horse to the Block; the Mounting, and seat of the Rider, &c.	26
Of Trotting in the Ring, and other Paces, &c.	28

The CONTENTS.

<i>The proper Use of the Wand, Bit, and Spur, for the well Teaching a Horse.</i>	31
<i>Rules and Directions for the Management of a Horse, &c.</i>	35
<i>Of the Manag'd Horse, with further Instructions.</i>	37
<i>Of Half-turnings, Doubles, Chambetta, Manage, Courier.</i>	39
<i>Sundry principal things yet remaining to be known by such as would be Experts or Compleat Horsemen, &c.</i>	42
<i>Of the Bound, Leap, and Terk.</i>	44
<i>Of the Capriole and Corvette.</i>	ib.
<i>Short infallible Rules to be Observ'd and Practis'd by every Horseman.</i>	45
<i>Other ways and methods for the Management of a Horse, &c.</i>	46
<i>The use of the Tramel.</i>	47
<i>Times proper to alter the Tramel, and convenient to mount.</i>	48
<i>How to stop in a full career, Advance, &c.</i>	ib.
<i>How to oblige Horses to Retire, and endure various Bits.</i>	49
<i>Turnings, and strain Turns, &c.</i>	ib.
<i>Observations on Ambling, Racking and Galloping.</i>	51, 52
<i>The Running Horse, or Racer, how to Manage, Feed, &c.</i>	53
<i>The first Fortnights Ordering the Running-horse, &c.</i>	54
<i>Things proper to be observed in Heats, &c.</i>	55
<i>Rules for the second Fortnights Keeping.</i>	56
<i>Directions to Order him after this.</i>	58
<i>The third Fortnight how to order him.</i>	59
<i>Cervial Balls for the third Fortnight.</i>	ib.
<i>Rules for the fourth and last Fortnight.</i>	ib.
<i>Cuts, Snips and Blazes for the Beautifying a Horse, how to make them.</i>	61
<i>Things to be observed when you put your Horse to Grass.</i>	62
<i>The Drink to be given before Grass.</i>	ib.
<i>How the Horse is to be used when taken from Grass.</i>	63
<i>Other material Directions.</i>	ib.
<i>Blood-letting, on what occasion it ought to be used.</i>	ib.
<i>What Season is best to let Blood in.</i>	64
<i>Observations on a Horse, as to the Brain, Sinews, Veins, relating to Health, Strength, &c.</i>	65
<i>The Bones that frame a Horse's Body, their Number, and how they are placed.</i>	66
<i>Of the four Humours in the Horse, &c.</i>	67
<i>The Humours or Constitution of the Horse's Body, &c.</i>	ib.

The CONTENTS.

How to prepare a Horse to receive Medicines if any Distemper has seized him.	69
What Purgations with least danger may be given to a Horse. ib.	ib.
Approved Rules to be observed by such as either Travel or Exercise Horses.	ib.
Another excellent way to the like purpose.	71
The Order of Curing Horses that are Diseased: The Canker, the Signs, and the Cures thereof.	72
Of the Ague or Fever in Horses.	ibid.
Another of the same.	73
Of the Ague in the Head.	ibid.
Of the sudden Sickness of a Horse.	74
Of a Horse that cannot Piss.	ibid.
Of the Pains in the Head.	75
To bring Hair again.	ibid.
Of the Stone and Cholick in a Horse.	ibid.
Of killing the Fire, either in Burning or Shoo.	ibid.
Of a Horse that stumbleth, &c.	ibid.
Of the Canker.	76
Of the Farcin.	ib.
Of the Fistula.	78
These Infirmities are cured by this following Medicine; all broken Bones, all Bones out of joynt, &c.	79
Of Leprosie and universal Manginess.	ib.
Another of the same.	80
Of the running of the Erusb.	ib.
To make a Horse that he shall not neigh.	81
To make a white mark on a Horse.	ibid.
To ripen an Imposthume.	ibid.
Of a Farcin, &c.	ibid.
Of sinking a Fistula, or Wind-gall.	82
Of a Wrench in the Fetter-lock, &c.	ibid.
Of a Blister.	ibid.
Of a Wind gall that it shall not grow again.	ibid.
Of Curing a sudden Hurt.	ibid.
Of the dangerous Galling of a Horse.	ibid.
Repairing a broken Hoof, &c.	ibid.
Of setting of the Guts.	83
To make a Horse follow his Master.	ibid.
	of

The CONTENTS.

Of Bones out of Joint.	ibid.
Of pulling out of Shivers or Thorns, &c.	ibid.
Of a Spungie Wart.	ibid.
Of the Sinews cut and bruised.	ibid.
Of the Curb.	84
Another for the same.	ibid.
Of Wind-galls in Horses.	ibid.
Of the Pipes or Crutches in Horses.	ibid.
Of the Graveling of Horses.	85
The Ring-bone in Horses.	ibid.
Of the Crown-Scab.	ibid.
These Infirmities are Cured by the following Medicines, viz.	
Splinters, Spavins, Curbs, Ring-bones, &c.	ibid.
Of the Retreat or clogging the Foot, &c.	86
Of Surbaiting.	ibid.
Another.	ibid.
Instructions in giving of Fire, or using of Corrosives, which	
heal all sorts of Parcies, Cankers, Fistula's, &c.	ibid.
Of a Horse that is prick'd in the Foot with a Nail, or	
otherwise.	87
Of the Quitter-bone.	ibid.
Of the Hoof-bound.	88
Of the Loosning of the Hoof.	89
Of the casting the Hoof.	ibid.
For Foundring, Pretezing, or any other Imperfection of the	
Feet, or Hoofs of a Horse.	90
For hurts upon the Cronets of the Hoofs, &c.	91
To help the Surbaiting or Soreness of the Feet.	ibid.
Of the Dry Spavin.	ibid.
Another for the same.	92
Of the wet or Blood-Spavin.	93
All these Distempers are cured by the Medicine following.	All
Watery Eyes. All Blood-shotten Eyes, &c.	ibid.
For a Wrench or Sprain in the Pastern.	ibid.
Of a Horse that is Hipped.	ibid.
Of Stifling, and Hurts in the Stifler.	94
Of Wounds.	95
A Receipt for any extraordinary Cold or Cough, &c.	ibid.
For any dangerous Bots or Maw-worms.	97
	To

The CONTENTS.

To heal or dry up any old Ulcer or Cancerous Sore.	ibid.
For any Sore-Eyes in Horses.	98
For an old Strain or Lameness in the Joints, &c.	ibid.
Of a Black-Sinew Strain, &c.	ibid.
For any desperate Strain in the Shoulder, or other hidden Parts, or any Fistula, Pole-Evil, &c.	99
Of a Flash Quarter.	100
For an Over-reach on the Heel.	ibid.
For an upper Taint or an Over-reach upon the Back, &c.	ibid.
Of the Nether Joint.	101
Of the Serew, or Serow.	ibid.
All these Infirmities are Cured by this Medicine following :	
Fevers in general, the Pestilence, &c.	ibid.
For the Malender.	103
Another of the same.	ibid.
Of the Splint.	104
Another of the same.	ibid.
For Foundring.	ibid.
For the Shoulderspight.	106
For a Frothy Hoof.	107
For the blasting of the Hoof.	ibid.
For a Pinch or a Gall in the Withers.	ibid.
A present Remedy for the Staggers.	ibid.
For the Strangles.	ibid.
For the Swelling of the Fore-legs.	ibid.
Another for the same.	108
Another for the same.	ibid.
All these Infirmities are Cured by this following Medicine :	
Impostumes in the Ears. Ulcers in the Nose, &c.	ibid.
For a Grief in the Shoulder, &c.	109
Of the Wrenching of the Shoulder.	110
Of Splayting of the Shoulder.	111
A Remedy for the Spavins.	ibid.
For the Colt-Evil.	ibi.
For the Swelling of the Cods.	112
For the Mattering of the Yard.	ibid.
For the Tetter.	ibid.
How to Remedy the Wind-gall.	ibid.
An excellent and speedy help for the Glanders.	ibid.

The CONTENTS.

<i>An Excellent Remedy for the Haw in the Eye.</i>	113
<i>A rare Medicine for a sore Back, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>An excellent Cure for the Scab and the sore Crupper.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Foaling of the Yard.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the swelling of the Gads or Stones.</i>	ibid.
<i>For a bony Excreſſion upon any Member of a Horſe.</i>	114
<i>To cure the running Fruſh, or any Impoſtumatation of the Sole of the Foot, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>For incording or Burſting.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Botch in the Groins of a Horſe.</i>	115
<i>All theſe Infirmities are cured by this following Medicine: All Head-ach; All Frenzies; the Lethargy, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>For ſurſeiting with Provender.</i>	116
<i>For the Navel-Gall.</i>	117
<i>Another Remedy for the ſame.</i>	ibid.
<i>Another Remedy for the ſame.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the ſweying of the Back.</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Guarded or ſoul ſwelled Legs, or other Parts, &c.</i>	118
<i>How to keep a Horſe or a Fade from Tyring.</i>	119
<i>Two ſorts of Balls to cure any violent Cold, &c.</i>	120
<i>Another way how to fatten a Horſe ſuddenly.</i>	121
<i>For the Hide-bound.</i>	122
<i>For the Navel-gall.</i>	ibid.
<i>Another Remedy for the ſame Sore.</i>	123
<i>Another Cure for the ſame.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Worms.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Lax.</i>	124
<i>For Coſtiveness or Belly-bound.</i>	ibid.
<i>All theſe Infirmities are Cured by the Whey only contained in this following Medicine: The Bloody Riſts, &c.</i>	125
<i>For the Yellows.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Surſeiting and Foundring of the Body.</i>	126
<i>For the Collick.</i>	ibid.
<i>Another cure for the ſame.</i>	127
<i>Another for the ſame.</i>	ibid.
<i>For ſurſeiting with Provender.</i>	128
<i>Theſe Infirmities are cured by the following Medicines: All Conuulſions of Sinnewes, all cramps whatſoever, &c.</i>	ibid.
<i>For the Wens or Knots in the Body.</i>	ibid.

Another

The CONTENTS.

113	Another cure for the same.	129
bid.	Another Remedy for the same.	ibid.
bid.	For the falling of the Crest.	ibid.
bid.	For the Crick in the Neck.	ibid.
bid.	To draw the Wolves Teeth.	130
bid.	For the swelling of the Gums.	131
114	Of the Rists, or corruption in the Pallate, &c.	ibid.
e of	For the Cumey in the Mouth.	ibid.
bid.	For the Heat in the Mouth.	ibid.
bid.	For the Canker in the Mouth.	132
15	For the Barbels or Paps under the Tongue.	ibid.
All	For the Hurt of the Tongue with a Bit.	ibid.
bid.	For the Giggs in the Mouth.	ibid.
16	These Infirmities are cured by the Medicine following : Mangi-	
17	ness in the Main, Manginess in the Tail, &c.	ibid.
bid.	For the Bleeding at the Nose.	133
bid.	Another Remedy for the same.	ibid.
bid.	Of the Vines.	134
18	Another Cure for the same.	ibid.
19	For the Canker in the Nose.	ibid.
20	Another Cure for the same.	135
21	For the Canker of the Eyes.	ibid.
22	For the Impostumes in the Ear.	ibid.
bid.	These Infirmities are cured by this Medicine following, all	
23	Light Galls, to skin Sores, to dry up Humours.	136
bid.	Of the Pole-Evil.	ibid.
bid.	For Impostume in the Ear.	137
24	For the Canker in the Eye.	ibid.
bid.	For the Haw in the Eye.	ibid.
in	For the Lunatick Eyes.	138
25	These Infirmities are cured by this following Medicine : All	
bid.	Wounds in general, all Sinnews cut, &c.	139
26	For the Staggers.	ibid.
bid.	Another for the same.	140
27	A Sovereign Medicine called the Emperor of all Medicines	
bid.	concerning Horses.	ibid.
28	A safe Purge to prevent Sicknes.	141
bid.	For the Cramp, or Convulsions of the Sinews.	ibid.

THE CONTENTS.

<i>How to order him after this, for the recovery of his Limbs, &c.</i>	142
<i>For a Cold in the Head.</i>	ib.
<i>These Infirmities are cured by the Medicine following.</i>	The
<i>Pool-Eyil : The Swelling after Blood-letting, &c.</i>	143
<i>For the Glaunders.</i>	ib.
<i>How to Order the Horse after this, &c.</i>	144
<i>The Mourning of the Chine, its Cause and Cure.</i>	145
<i>The manner of ordering him after this.</i>	146
<i>These following things are most excellent to put into Horses Provender, to preserve them from Diseases.</i>	ib.
<i>Broken Wind, the cause.</i>	147
<i>For a broken Wind, the Cure.</i>	ib.
<i>A most Sovereign Drink to preserve a Horse's Lungs and Liver clear, &c.</i>	148
<i>Of the Signs of the inward Sickneses of Horses.</i>	149
<i>Observations to be taken from the Horse's Feeding and Dung, as to the state of his Body, &c.</i>	151
<i>Things to be inferred from the before going Observations.</i>	152
<i>Some other choice Observations, for preventing of all inward Sickneses.</i>	ib.
<i>To refine the Blood, &c.</i>	154
<i>Of bleeding in any Heart-Sickness, &c.</i>	ib.
<i>How to prepare your Horse after Bleeding, &c.</i>	155
<i>An Excellent Perfume for inward Sickneses, &c.</i>	157
<i>An Excellent Receipt, with Directions for Ordering a Horse in extream Sickneses, and danger of Life.</i>	158
<i>A closing Method to perfect the Cure of dangerous Sickneses in a Horse, pursuant to the former Rules</i>	159
<i>An excellent Medicine for any violent Sickneses, &c.</i>	160
<i>How to order you Horse after receiving the fore-going Medicine, to perfect his Recovery.</i>	161
<i>To help the Horse that cannot Dung, &c.</i>	162
<i>Of the danger of Laxativeness in a Horse, and how to remedy it.</i>	ib.
<i>The means to help and preserve Horses from inward Diseases.</i>	163



ADVERTISEMENT.

S E T S of Cuts for Bibles, in *Folio*, *Quarto*, and *Octavo*, curiously engraven on Copper, containing near two hundred Plates, are now sold to Book-sellers at a cheaper Price than usual, viz. The *Folio* at 9 s. The *Quarto* at 7 s. 6 d. The *Octavo*'s at 6 s. Also various Bibles of the several Volumes, fit for the said Cuts to bind with: By Henry Nelme, at the *Leg and Star* in *Cornhill*.

Where Gentlemen, or others, may be furnished with the said Bibles ready bound, either with, or without Cuts: Also Common-Prayers with the best Cuts extant.

At the said place may Country-Chapmen be furnished with all sorts of Bibles, Common-Prayer-Books, Testaments, Psalters, Primmers, Horn-Books; or other Saleable Chapmen's Books.

BOOKS newly Published, and Sold by Henry Nelme, at the Leg and Star in Cornhill.

Familiar Letters on several Occasions: Written by Mr. Dryden, Mr. Wycherly, Mr. Congreve, Mr. — Mr. Dennis, with some Passionate Love-Letters, and a Translation of *Voiture's* Letters; by Mr. Dryden, and Mr. Dennis. 1 rice bound 2 s. 6 d.

An Essay on the Agreeableness of the *Christian Faith* with Natural Reason: By way of Dialogue. Written in Latin by *Sebastianus Castellio*, with his Apology for himself: Englished by C. B. Price bound 1 s.

Hugo Grotius's second Part of the Truth of *Christian Religion*: or, the Confutation of Paganism, Judaism, and Mahometism. Translated by C. B. a Divine of the Church of England: Exemplified by Memorials of the truly Pious and *Christian Lives* of Alderman *Whitmore*, Bishop *Wilkins*, Bishop *Reynolds*, Alderman *Adams*: By the same Author. Price bound 1 s.

Alcander and Philocrates: Or, the Pleasures and Disquietudes of Marriage. A Novel. Price bound 1 s.

Love

Love in Distress; or, the Lucky Discovery. A Novel, Written by the Honourable, the Lady ——— Price bound 1 s.

The Husbandman, Farmer, and Grazier's Compleat Instructor, in feeding, breeding, buying and selling Cattle; with approved Remedies for all Diseases and Grievances incident to them; viz. Bulls, Cows, Calves, Oxen, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, and all other domestick Cattle and Poultry, with the Experienced Vermin-killer. Price bound 1 s.

Vox Corvi: or, the Voice of a Raven, that thrice spoke these words distinctly, *Look into Colossians the 3d. and the 15th.* To which is added, Serious Addresses to the People of this Kingdom; shewing the use we ought to make of this Voice from Heaven. By *Alex. Clogie*, Minister of *Wigmore*, &c. Price 6 d.

The Mystery of Husbandry: or, Arable, Pasture and Wood-Land improved: By *Leonard Meager*, Price bound 1 s.

The new Art of Gardening, with the Gardener's Almanack: containing the true Art of Gardening in all its Particulars. 1. The site of a proper Plat of Ground for planting Fruit-trees; with the manner of Planting, Grafting, Imbudding, Inoculating, and ordering all sorts of Fruit-trees, and Fruits in all seasons. The Art of making Cyder, Perry, and Wines of divers sorts of Fruits. 2. Of the Kitchen-Garden, and what things are proper to be done in it, as to Herbs, Plants, Roots, Berries, Fruits, &c. 3. Of the Flower-Garden, how to order it, and rear choice Flowers, Slips, Layers, sow Seeds, make Off-sets, and plant them in their proper Earths, Seasons, and due Waterings; with the Names and Descriptions of the most material ones. 4. Of Greens, how to order and preserve them; with Rules for the Conservatory and Green-house. To each Head is added an Almanack, shewing what is to be done every Month in the Year. By *Leonard Meager*.

A True Exact and Impartial History of the Horrid and Detestable Plots and Conspiracies, carry'd on by *Papists*, and other wicked Persons, for the compassing the Death and Destruction of His Sacred Majesty King *William III.* and

Books Printed for H. Nelme.

and Introducing *Popery* and *Slavery*, by an Invasion from *France*. With the manner of its Miraculous Discovery, when ripe to be put in Execution. Also, an Account of the Trials, Speeches, Confessions, and Executions of those that have suffer'd for 'it; with their Characters, from the first of them, to Sir *John Fenwick*, who was Beheaded on *Tower-hill*, on an *Act of Attainder*, with the Paper he left behind him: And many other things, worthy of particular Remark, for informing the present and future Ages. The Second Edition, with Additions. Price bound 1 s.

The Secretary in Fashion: or, Instructions for Writing Letters. Price bound 2 s.

A Dictionary of hard *English* Words, with their Interpretation. By *E. Coles*. Price bound 1 s. 6 d.

The Compleat English School-Master, or the most natural and easie Method of spelling *English*. By *E. Cole*, Author of the *English* Dictionary. Price bound 1 s.

School-Books Printed for H. Nelme.

More *English* Examples to be turned into *Latin*, beginning with the *Nominative Case* and *Verb*, as 'tis varied throughout all the Moods and Tenses, and after fitted to the Rules of *Grammar*. To which are added, *Cautions for Children to avoid mistakes in making Latin*, &c. By *Edw. Leeds*, School-master in *Bury St. Edmunds*.

Seneca's Tragedies. Printed at *Oxford*.

Greek Testament in 24, of a large Print. Price bound 1 s. 6 d.

Lucius Florus, in 24.

Quintus Curtius, in 24. Price bound 1 s.

Books of Divinity Printed for H. Nelme.

Certain Sermons, or Homilies appointed to be read in Churches, in the Time of Queen *Elizabeth*, in Folio, of a large Roman Print. Price bound 6 s.

Christ's Famous Titles, and a Believer's Golden Chain, handled in divers Sermons; together with his Cabinet of Jewels, or a Glimpse of *Sion's Glory*; As also, *Christ's*

Printed for H. Nelme.

Office to London. The great Day of God's Wrath. The necessity of Watching and Praying, with a Treatise of Death. By *W. Dyer*. Price bound 1 s.

Supplications of Saints, a Book of Prayers and Praises, in four Parts : By *T. Sorocold*. Price bound 1 s.

The Sinner's Tears, in Meditations and Prayers : By *T. Terriplace*. Price bound 1 s.

The Child's Instructor, leading to true Spelling and Reading *English* ; with useful Counsel, and weighty Arguments, perswading them to remember their Creator in the days of their Youth. Also a Confession of Faith, and Catechism for younger People : By *B. Keech*. Price bound 4 d.

Clavis Bibliorum : The Key of the Bible, unlocking the richest Treasures of the Holy Scripture : By *Fran. Roberts*, D. D. Price bound 7 s.

Sion in distress : Or, the Groans of the Protestant Church, for many Ages past, under the cruel Tyranny of Popish Persecution, and merciless Torments. As also the Marks of the Antichristian Romish Church ; the Arraignment of the Scarlet Whore, and the Complaints of the Persecuted Nations against her, from the Primitive Times, down to the Year 1680. with her final Doom and Sentence. To which is newly added, *Sion's Relief*, and Joyful Triumph over all her Enemies, under the Reign of His Sacred Majesty, King *William III.* Price bound 1 s.

Mr. Rutherford's Letters, the Third Edition. Now divided in three Parts : The first containing those which were written from *Aberdeen*, where he was confined by a Sentence of the High Commission, drawn forth against him, partly upon the account of his declining them, partly upon the account of his Nonconformity : The second and third, containing some which were written from *Anworth* before he was by the Prelates Persecution thrust from his Ministry ; and others upon occasions afterward, from *St. Andrews*, *London*, &c. By a Well-wisher to the Work and People of God. Price bound 6 d.

Biblicus : Or, an exact Concordance to the Holy Scriptures : By *F. Jackson*.

of

es,

7:

and

gu-

the

ate-

d.

the

rts,

rch,

ish

arks

the

ati-

the

rich

all

ing

ivie

vere

Sen

aim

up

and

ortbe

a his

n Se

and

Holy

k Jon